

LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION

FOR THE

MIDDLE FORMS OF SCHOOLS

BY

M. A. NORTH, M.A.

ASSISTANT MASTER AT CLIFTON COLLEGE

AND

THE REV. A. E. HILLARD, D.D.

HIGH MASTER OF ST. PAUL'S SCHOOL

AUTHORS OF "GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION FOR SCHOOLS"

NINTH IMPRESSION

EIGHTH EDITION

Textkit - Greek and Latin Learning Tools

<http://www.textkit.com>

RIVINGTONS

34 KING STREET, COVENT GARDEN

LONDON

1913

Crown **Svo.** 2s. 6d.

**ELEMENTARY LATIN PROSE
EXERCISES**

BY THE REV. A. E. HILLARD, D.D.

AND

C. G. BOTTING, M.A.

Assistant Master at St. Paul's School

This book is designed as a complete introduction to North and Hillard's **Latin Prose Composition**, and may be used from the time when Latin is begun.

LONDON: RIVINGTONS

PREFACE

THE authors wish to explain one or two points with reference to the use of this book.

The arrangement of subjects is meant to adapt it for school use. If a definite section of the book be assigned to each Form, and the division suggested in the Table of Contents be adopted for this purpose, each Form will deal with some new kind of clause in the Compound Sentence, the first with Final and Consecutive Clauses, the second with simple Indirect Statement, and so on. *Pari passu* those subjects are dealt with that concern the structure of the simple sentence (Participles, Case Constructions, &c.). In dealing with the cases the book does not treat each case as a whole, but gives the most necessary constructions (*e.g.* those of Time and Place) to the lowest Forms, and other constructions later on.

The Vocabularies given for the separate exercises (p. 203) are meant to be an important part of the work. They are meant to be learned and kept up by revision. The authors have tried to bring in all words commonly required in Latin Prose Composition below the VIth Form, and any uncommon words required in an exercise have been given in notes, and not included in the vocabulary to be learnt. These Vocabularies are placed together

at the end of the book, so that they may not be before the eye of a boy when he does an exercise in school.

The authors have tried to write the exercises so that no word or construction may be required which has not previously been given. This applies to the "connected pieces" (which begin from the lowest Form) as well as to the sentence-exercises. Each piece has been written expressly for the place in which it stands.

Each exercise is marked either [*A*] or [*B*]. This is to divide the section assigned to a Form into two terms' work. Either the [*A*] exercises or the [*B*] exercises will make a complete course, and contain sufficient practice in constructions. But it is recommended that the Vocabularies of both [*A*] and [*B*] exercises should be learnt in any case, and of course the Rules and help given at the head of exercises are not repeated.

After some hesitation the authors have added a "General Vocabulary," collecting all the words given in the separate Vocabularies. This is meant to assist short memories, but not to supply again constructions, genders, etc., which should have been learnt in the separate vocabularies.

At the end of the book will also be found some further help in the way of Vocabulary: (1) A list of Military phrases grouped together (p. 244); (2) A list of the most useful Prepositional phrases (p. 236); (3) A list of the commonest Latin Synonyms (p. 239). These are to be learnt or referred to as occasion requires.

The rules on the Order of Words in Latin are grouped at the end of the exercises (p. 195). This seemed better

than scattering them throughout the book, or trying to bring each in where first required. But the more elementary of them are required in the earliest exercises.

Before beginning this book a boy should be able to translate simple sentences (including easy questions and commands) into Latin, and should understand the rules of agreement, the use of the Passive Voice, the simplest uses of Pronouns and Prepositions, and the easiest Case constructions. (Ablative of Instrument, Agent, Cause; Dative of Indirect Object and Possessor; Accusative after Factitive Verbs, etc.) But for the occasional revision of this elementary work the "Preliminary Exercises" (**A** to **K**) are prefixed.

The thanks of the authors are due to many colleagues at Clifton for suggestions, and especially to the late Mr. E. N. P. Moor, to Mr. W. W. Asquith, and Mr. E. H. C. Smith, for kindness in reading through proofs. They wish to acknowledge also the great assistance given them in making the vocabularies by Mr. R. D. Budworth, of Magdalen College, and Mr. E. G. North, of Keble College, Oxford. It should be mentioned that the book has been used in a privately printed edition at Clifton College during the last two terms, and that the present edition has therefore benefited by the experience thus gained.

FOURTH EDITION

THE Vocabularies have been revised and improved, and the Rules for Oratio Obliqua (page 182) have been stated more clearly and fully. A few other small alterations have been made where it seemed advisable.

CONTENTS¹

	PAGES
PREFACE	iii.
PRELIMINARY EXERCISES	xi.-xix.
SEQUENCE OF TENSES	2, 3
FINAL SENTENCES	4-7
CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES	8-12
FINAL AND CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES	13-19
INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT OR COMPLEMENT—	
PROLATE INFINITIVE	20-23
PARTICIPLES	24-31
<hr style="width: 20%; margin: 10px auto;"/>	
TIME, PLACE, SPACE	32-35
ABLATIVES OF COMPARISON, MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE,	
QUALITY; WORDS GOVERNING ABLATIVE	36-37
INDIRECT STATEMENT	38-47
PRICE AND VALUE	48-49
PARTITIVE GENITIVE	50, 51
VERBS GOVERNING DATIVE	52, 53
EXERCISES FOR REVISION	54-57
<hr style="width: 20%; margin: 10px auto;"/>	
PASSIVE OF INTRANSITIVE VERBS	58, 59

¹ For explanation of the Divisions of this Table of Contents see the beginning of the Preface.

	PAGES
DIRECT COMMAND ¹	60, 61
INDIRECT COMMAND	62-68
DATIVE OF PURPOSE	69
ABLATIVES OF ORIGIN, SEPARATION, ASSOCIATION	70, 71
ABLATIVES OF RESPECT AND MANNER	72, 73
EXERCISES FOR REVISION	73-77
<hr/>	
GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES, GERUNDIVE ATTRACTION	78-81
SUPINES	82, 83
EXERCISES FOR REVISION IN GERUNDS, ETC.	84, 85
DIRECT QUESTIONS ¹	86, 87
INDIRECT QUESTIONS	88-95
SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENT, ETC.	96-99
IMPERSONAL VERBS	100, 101
GENITIVE (OBJECTIVE, ETC.)	102, 103
EXERCISES FOR REVISION	104-109
<hr/>	
RELATIVE WITH SUBJUNCTIVE	110-115
GERUND AND GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING OBLIGATION	116-119
VERBS OF FEARING	120-123
CAUSAL CLAUSES	124-126
EXERCISES FOR REVISION	127-129
QUIN AND QUOMINUS	130-135
EXERCISES FOR REVISION	135-139
<hr/>	
TEMPORAL CLAUSES	140-155
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	156-163
PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS	164-167

¹ Inserted in these places for convenience of revision before doing the corresponding Indirect construction.

CONTENTS.

ix

	PAGES
EXERCISES FOR REVISION	167-171
CONCESSIVE CLAUSES	172-177
COMPARATIVE CLAUSES	178-181
ORATIO OBLIQUA	182-194
<hr/>	
THE ORDER OF WORDS IN THE SIMPLE SENTENCE	196
,, ,, IN THE COMPOUND SENTENCE	199
<hr/>	
VOCABULARIES TO THE SEPARATE EXERCISES	204
PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES	239
SYNONYMS	242
VOCABULARY OF MILITARY PHRASES	247
GENERAL VOCABULARY	254
INDEX OF CONSTRUCTIONS	285

PRELIMINARY EXERCISES

These Exercises from A to K are meant to supply occasional practice in the more elementary rules not covered by this book. As they are not intended to be included in the course of the book, a separate vocabulary of the harder words is given at the foot of each.

Exercise A.

ACTIVE AND PASSIVE; ABLATIVE OF INSTRUMENT AND AGENT.

1. The land was ruled by a good king.
2. The soldier was killed by an arrow.
3. The boy killed the bird with a stone.
4. The Roman general was defeated by Hannibal.
5. The soldier killed the peasant with a sword.
6. We have been conquered by the enemy.
7. The walls were defended by the citizens.
8. Our city was built by Romulus.
9. The Romans fortified their city with a wall.
10. Gaul is separated from Britain by the sea.
11. A high wall defends the camp.
12. We are loved by our friends, and we love them.
13. We shall not be conquered by the enemy.
14. The camp is defended by a long wall.
15. The citizens defended the city.
16. Cities are defended by the citizens.
17. We have taken the camp.
18. The camp has been taken by us.
19. They are teaching the boys.
20. The boys are taught by books.

arrow, sagitta.

stone, lapis; gen. lapidis.

peasant, agricola, m. 1st decl.

defend, defendere.

build, aedificare.

fortify, münire.

separate, dividere.

friend, amicus.

teach, docere.

Exercise B.

COMMAND; REMOTER OBJECT.

1. Give me this book.
2. Do not give him a sword, but give him arrows.
3. Let us go, and let them remain here.
4. Do not go home, but return to us.
5. Let him go away now, but come again.
6. Keep these books. Do not lose them.
7. Let us fortify the city with walls.
8. Do not let us return to the city.
9. Boys, obey your masters.
10. Let us spend the winter in the city.
11. Do not remain at home.
12. Let them build ships. Let them not be afraid of the sea.
13. Do not give me the book.
14. This is Caius's book—give it to him.
15. Do not let us remain here.
16. Let him be killed.
17. Do not be afraid of the sea.
18. Citizens, defend the city with your arms.
19. Give me the letter.
20. Let all return to the city.

book, liber ; *gen.* libri.
sword, gladius.
remain, manēre.
(to) home, dōmum.
at home, domi.
return, redire.
again, rursus.
keep, servare.
lose, perdere.

fortify, munire.
obey, pārere, *dat.*
spend (time), agere.
winter, hiems ; *gen.* hiēmis.
build, aedificare.
be afraid of, fear, timere.
defend, defendere.
letter, epistola.

Exercise C.

APPOSITION; COMPOSITE SUBJECT.

1. Romulus, son of Mars, was the first king of the Romans.
2. Obey the king, the father of his country.
3. You and your brother will be killed by the enemy.
4. Caius and I are well.
5. The youths were killed by their father, Brutus.
6. You and I and our friends will set out.
7. The king and queen are dear to all of the citizens.
8. By good laws Numa, the second king of Rome, benefited his country.
9. Both men and women were killed by the soldiers.
10. All of us love life, the greatest gift of the gods.
11. The king lost his kingdom and his riches, the things most pleasant to him.
12. Citizens, obey me, your king.
13. Neither the king nor his sons will be killed.
14. The king and his son Caius have been killed.
15. He and I will go away.
16. Give the letter to me, your king.
17. She and her brother have been sent home.
18. His father, the king of Italy, has sent him.
19. I have come to you, my own brother.
20. Both the men and the women are good citizens.

obey, pārēre, dat.
country (fatherland), patria.
to be well, valēre.
youth, jūvenis.
friend, amicus.
set out, prōficisci.
dear, cārus.
benefit, prodesse, dat.

both men and women, et vīri
et fēminae.
gift, dōnum.
lose, perdēre.
kingdom, regnum.
riches, dīvītiaē.
pleasant, jūcundus.
letter, epistola.

Exercise D.*QUESTIONS; USE OF RELATIVE.*

1. Who saw the man, who killed the king?
2. Did you, who were present, see him?
3. Did not Marius, the Roman general, conquer the Teutones?
4. He was not killed by the enemy, was he?
5. Has he lost the presents which you gave him?
6. What general conquered the Teutones?
7. What did you buy for your brother?
8. I have lost the book which I bought for my brother.
9. Whose son are you?
10. Were you not present?
11. Surely he did not say that?
12. What name is dearest to you?
13. This is the book that I lost.
14. What cities has he taken?
15. By whom was he killed?
16. Am I not your father?
17. He did not say that, did he?
18. She is not the woman, whose son was present.
19. What city do I see?
20. What man's house have you bought?

to be present, adesse.
lose, perdere.
present, donum.
buy, emere.

dear, cārus.
woman, mulier.
house, dōmus.

Exercise E.*FACTITIVE VERBS;
VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES.*

1. The people elected Pompey consul.
2. Marius, who was often elected consul, was a great general.
3. You have often asked me for advice, which I cannot give you.
4. He was thought a good general by all.
5. You wished to conceal the sword from me, but it was given me by the slave.
6. You have been taught many things by your master.
7. Did I not teach you Greek?
8. The general asked the consul for the soldiers.
9. Marius, who became the enemy of Sulla, killed many Roman citizens.
10. You and I will hide this from our friends.
11. He, having been made king, did not ask his people for advice.
12. We were asked for the sword, which we had concealed from our father.
13. I was asked by Caius for a sword
14. They were thought to be very wise.
15. I hid from Caius the sword for which you asked me.
16. Were you not taught Greek by your master?
17. They became consuls, because they were thought to be wise.
18. Why did you hide this from Caius?
19. You, who did this, were not elected consul by the citizens.
20. The man, whom you asked for advice, has taught me many things.

ask, rōgare.
teach, dōcēre.
hide, cōcēre, cēlare.
elect, creare.
consul, consul, -sūlis.
advice, cōsīlium.

Greek (language), Graeca lingua
friend, āmicus.
people, pōpūlus.
sword, glādus.
wise, sāpiens.
because, quod.

Exercise F.

*DATIVE OF POSSESSOR ;
SIMPLE USES OF SE, SUUS, IPSE, IS.*

1. He killed himself with his own sword.
2. He has a garden which was given him by his friend.
3. He bought the house for himself and his wife.
4. I have never seen him himself, but I have seen his children.
5. His children ask him for bread, which he cannot give them.
6. He has given his children the bread which they asked him for.
7. They have ships and sailors, but they have not many harbours.
8. He wished to conceal his opinion from me, but I asked his friends.
9. You Gauls fear Caesar and his army.
10. He led his army against the Gauls, and took their camp.
11. The citizens themselves wished to make him consul.
12. We have many friends, whom we do not often see.
13. I myself will give you his sword.
14. We ourselves have many ships.
15. He himself gave me his own sword.
16. I killed him, because he wished to make himself king.
17. I had many friends once, but now I have few.
18. I asked you for their bread.
19. They gave us their sailors and ships.
20. We ourselves have been taught many things by him.

garden, hortus, -i.
buy, emēre.
wife, uxor, -ōris.
children, libēri.
bread, pānis, -is *m.*
sailor, nauta *m.*

harbour, portus, -ūs.
opinion, sententia.
fear, timēre.
once, ōlim, quondam.
few, pauci.

Exercise G.

ABLATIVE OF CAUSE;
WORDS GOVERNING ABLATIVE.

1. A state which has a good king enjoys peace.
2. Relying on the courage of his soldiers, he led them against the enemy.
3. They died of fear.
4. Oxen feed on grass, and lions on flesh.
5. We use riches, and wish to get possession of them.
6. Relying on his wings, Mercury had no need of a ship.
7. A man who performs his duty is worthy of praise.
8. The enemy wish to get possession of our camp.
9. Through his help I can now use my sword.
10. We have need of the soldiers we have asked him for.
11. A man who is contented with little is worthy of a happy life.
12. We shall often use the books which you have given us.
13. You seem to me to be worthy of praise.
14. We have no need of these ships.
15. They attacked the city, relying on the courage of their soldiers.
16. I did this through the advice of Caius.
17. By this courage he took the city.
18. Did you use the riches which were given you?
19. Many men have died of hunger.
20. You, who perform your duties well, have many friends.

(For words which govern the ablative see Vocabulary 42.)

state, civitas.
die, mori.
flesh, cāro, carnis.
riches, divītiaē.
wing, āla.
duty, officium.
help, auxiliūm.

little (noun), parvum (neuter
of parvus).
happy, beātus.
book, liber, -brī.
often, saepe.
hunger, fāmes.

Exercise H.

EASY PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. Among the captives.
 2. At the house of Caius.
 3. Over and above the dowry.
 4. Before his feet.
 5. Without a ransom.
 6. From him.
 7. With his friends.
 8. With you.
 9. Because of his age.
 10. Owing to his joy.
 11. Through fear.
 12. Kind towards the poor.
 13. To advance towards the city.
 14. Through the river.
 15. In the presence of the king.
 16. Through scouts.
 17. By the king.
 18. From the fame of his deeds.
 19. From that time.
 20. Out of the bravest soldiers.
 21. He was sent to him with gifts.
 22. As hostages.
 23. For so great a service.
 24. Instead of horses.
 25. On the nearest hill.</p> | <p>26. Into his alliance.
 27. Under the general himself.
 28. At my house.
 29. To go under the earth.
 30. About terms of peace.
 31. Before a year.
 32. Round about the city.
 33. On this side of the mountains.
 34. Besides the messenger.
 35. Except the poet.
 36. Against Antiochus.
 37. About a thousand men.
 38. Around the mountain.
 39. Within the camp.
 40. Outside the gates.
 41. Below the city walls.
 42. In the power of the enemy.
 43. Behind the horsemen.
 44. According to the laws.
 45. Contrary to the laws.
 46. Adjoining the camp.
 47. As far as his head.
 48. Near the garden.
 49. The army was sent under the yoke.
 50. It lies under your eyes.</p> |
|---|---|

captive, captivus.
dowry, dos; *gen.* dōtis.
ransom, pretium.
age, aetas.
joy, gaudium.
fear, mētus, -ūs.
poor, pauper.

scout, explorator.
gift, dōnum.
hostage, obses; *gen.* obsīdis.
service, mēritum.
nearest, proximus.
alliance, societas.

terms, conditiones.
messenger, nuntius.
poet, poēta, m.
horseman, eques.
garden, hortus.
yoke, jūgum.
lie, jācere.

Exercise K.*PREPOSITIONS.*

1. He came into the city with ten soldiers.
2. After one night he set out against the enemy.
3. In front of the house there is a field.
4. I cannot go across the sea without ships.
5. He was killed by his brother at a feast, amid all his friends.
6. He spoke to me about your house in your presence.
7. He went round about the city, and saw the walls.
8. He came towards me, and called out, "Who is in the city?"
9. The camp is on this side of the river, the army is beyond the city.
10. On account of the war no one goes outside the gates.
11. Besides these men we have no army in the city.
12. We saw him on the road.
13. He was brought by the soldiers into the presence of the king.
14. They escaped from prison without my knowledge.
15. They sailed past the island in a boat.
16. We sailed as far as Spain (Hispania).
17. They live near the island of Corsica.
18. He did this in sight of all.
19. I did this because of my friendship towards you.
20. Were you not going towards the city?
21. Men who live underground.
22. He led an army over the mountains against the enemy.
23. After the battle they were killed outside the city walls in the presence of their friends.
24. Before daybreak they came close to (under) the walls of the town.
25. I killed him after these things, not on account of them.

field, āger ; *gen. agri*.

feast, cēna.

prison, carcer, -is.

sail, nāvigare.

boat, linter ; *gen. lintris*, *f.*

friendship, amicitia.

daybreak, prima lux.

EXERCISES

SEQUENCE OF TENSES

Rule 1. The tenses in Latin are divided into two groups:

A. Primary tenses—

Ind.	Subj.
Present.	Present.
Future.	Perfect.
Perfect <i>with 'have.'</i>	

B. Historic tenses—

Imperfect.	Imperfect.
Perfect <i>without 'have.'</i> (Aorist.)	Pluperfect.
Pluperfect.	

Where we have a dependent sentence with its verb in the Subjunctive, the tense of the Subjunctive is determined by the tense of the principal verb. Primary tenses follow Primary, Historic tenses follow Historic.¹

The English will generally make it quite clear which of the two Primary tenses, or which of the two Historic tenses, is required in each case.

¹ The Historic Present may be regarded either as a Primary or as a Historic tense. The Imperative is always followed by a Primary tense.

Exercise 1.

In the following sentences Latin requires the dependent verb to be in the Subjunctive. Say (without translating) what *tense* you would put it in.

1. They have come in order that they *may conquer* us.
2. They sent money that we *might buy* our freedom.
3. We had already succeeded so well that we *hoped* to win.
4. We are so tired that we *cannot* work.
5. He ran so quickly that no one *could* catch him.
6. We do not know what he *is doing*.
7. Have you heard what he *has done*?
8. They did not know what the island *was* like.
9. We shall ask what he *is doing*.
10. We asked whether the war *had been finished*.
11. I do not know how many ships there *were*.
12. We were wondering why you *feared* us.
13. Tell me why you *are* afraid.
14. We shall work in order that we *may become* rich.

FINAL SENTENCES

Rule 2. Final Sentences (*i.e.* sentences expressing a purpose) have their verbs in the Subjunctive, introduced by *ut* when positive, by *ne* when negative.

EXAMPLES.

Laborant pauperes **ut** divites **fiant**.

Poor men work to become rich.

Se receperunt **ne** consilia ab hostibus **cognoscerentur**.

They retreated in order that their plans might not be discovered by the enemy.

Exercise 2 [A].

1. I am going to the city to buy bread.
2. He went to the city lest he should see his father.
3. We have gone home¹ to see our friends.
4. We shall go to Caesar to ask for peace.
5. Do not send me to ask for peace.
6. We were running fast that we might not be caught.
7. I have bought a horse that I may not be tired.
8. Give him a sword that he may not be killed.
9. You had gone to Italy to see the king's son.
10. We were sent to ask for peace.

¹ domum.

Exercise 3 [A].

1. The enemy retreated in order to avoid a battle.
2. We shall send 200 men in order that we may hinder the enemy's march.
3. They marched quickly so that the enemy might not learn their plans.
4. We advanced to the top of the hill¹ to see the enemy's camp.
5. He is marching with Caesar so that he may not be accused by us.
6. We work in order to become rich.
7. They have come to ask for arms from us.
8. In order that we may not think you a coward, fight bravely.
9. He did this in order that a poor man might not be consul.
10. We ought not to do this to be praised.

¹ *summus collis*. So with some other words :

the middle of the stream = *medium flumen*.

all of us = *omnes nos*.

the rest of the army = *reliquus exercitus*.

the whole of the city = *tota urbs*.

the end of the year = *extremus annus*.

In all these Latin uses *adjectives* where English uses the words 'rest,' 'all,' 'middle,' etc., as *nouns*

Exercise 4 [B].

1. I was sent to ask for peace.
2. I shall do this in order to help my friends.
3. They have gone away lest they should be seen.
4. They had gone away that they might not be seen.
5. We will leave the sick that we may not be hindered.
6. To help our friends we are willing to suffer pain.
7. To help us they had marched very quickly.
8. He did this in order to become consul.
9. They retreated that they might not be killed.
10. Let us go to the top of the hill to see the plain.

Exercise 5 [B].

1. In order not to be accused myself,¹ I accused my friend.
2. We ought to praise good men to make others good.
3. To avoid the enemy march very quickly.
4. We left the sick so that we might not be hindered.
5. I have not come to avoid my enemies.
6. To be safe stay in the city.
7. All of us will come with you,² so that you may be safe.
8. Do not come in order to save me.
9. In order that the enemy might not take the city the whole of the army set out.
10. That they may not be caught by the enemy do not send many men.

¹ 'ipse,' in agreement with subject expressed or understood.

² 'tecum,' 'Cum' follows its case in the same way in mecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, quibuscum.

CONSECUTIVE SENTENCES

*Rule 3. Consecutive Sentences (i.e. sentences expressing a consequence) have their verbs in the Subjunctive introduced by ut. When the consequence is negative we have ut non, ut nemo, ut nullus, ut nunquam, etc., according to the sense.*¹

EXAMPLES.

Tantum est periculum **ut** omnes **terreantur**.

So great is the danger that all are frightened.

Tam celeriter se receperunt **ut** hostes eos capere **non possent**.

They retreated so speedily that the enemy could not catch them.

¹ The sequence of tenses is the same as for Final clauses, with one exception; viz. the Perfect Subj. is often used after a historic tense. But only use it thus when (a) the result is "momentary," not continuous, and (b) the result actually did follow.

e.g. Tantus erat ardor militum ut nemo motum terrae **senserit**.

The soldiers were so engrossed that no one felt the earthquake.

Exercise 6 [A].

1. The soldiers are so brave that they always conquer the enemy.

2. He has done this in such a way that we do not praise him.

3. The enemy were so many that all our men were afraid.

4. He escaped so quickly that no one¹ could catch him.

5. The battle was fought² so fiercely that all the soldiers were killed.

6. The danger is so great that no ships can be saved.

7. So deep is the river that no one can cross it.

8. They have conquered the enemy so often that now they despise them.

9. Their fear was so great that they did not dare to cross the river.

10. So great a storm had arisen that all the sailors were terrified.

¹ Nemo is a noun, 'nobody,' 'no one.' Nullus is an adj., 'no,' 'none.'

² Pugnatum est = *the battle was fought.*

Exercise 7 [A].

1. We were so tired that we remained in the plain.
2. Are you strong enough to defeat the enemy?
3. The snow was so deep that we did not set out, but remained in the camp.
4. He has said this so often that now I am weary.
5. So numerous¹ were the enemy that they easily took the city.
6. The tree was so high that it fell, and lay on the ground.²
7. We were not brave enough to return to the battle.
8. Such was his courage that all men praised him, and wished to follow him.
9. He has done this so easily that he is not tired.
10. These trees were of such a kind that we could not climb them.

¹ *so numerous* = tot.

² *on the ground* = humi.

Exercise 8 [B].

1. Let us work in such a way that all men may praise us.
2. So many soldiers had arrived that the camp was full.
3. We have crossed the sea so often that we do not fear storms.
4. He asked me so often that I gave him the book.
5. The forces of the enemy are so great that we cannot despise them.
6. We were so greatly terrified that we all fled.
7. So many men were killed that we did not fight again.
8. They are such cowards (so cowardly) as not to dare to return into battle.
9. We are strong enough to save you.
10. We were not strong enough to fight against them.
11. They are so strong that they are always willing to work, and¹ do not¹ become weary.

¹ *and . . . not* = *neque*. Never put 'et' before a negative; *e.g.* do not say 'et nunquam,' but 'neque unquam'; do not say 'et nulla navis,' but 'neque ulla navis.'

Exercise 9 [B].

1. The tree was so high that it fell.
2. The sea is so great that we cannot cross it.
3. Will the snow be so deep that we cannot set out?
4. The sailors were so terrified that they left the ship.
5. He was so brave that he crossed the sea, and returned home.
6. The hill is so high that we cannot climb it.
7. The boys were so idle that I did not praise them.
8. He is so brave that he ought to be praised.
9. Such was his courage that all men praised him.
10. The island is of such a kind that I do not wish to see it.
11. They worked so well that they became rich, and were praised by all.

Exercise 10 [A].

In the following exercises Final and Consecutive sentences are mixed. When the sentence is negative remember that a negative final sentence *always* begins with *ne*, a consecutive sentence *never* does. Therefore for

“that no one” use *ne quis* in a final, *ut nemo* in a consecutive sentence.

“that no . . .” use *ne ullus* ,, *ut nullus* ,, ,,

“that never” use *ne unquam* ,, *ut nunquam* ,, ,,

1. We have come to defend the walls.
2. There is no one here so brave as to climb the walls alone.
3. The wall was made so high that no one might ever climb it.
4. The wall was made so high that no one could ever climb it.
5. I am so tired that I cannot work.
6. The messengers, who were sent to ask for peace, have returned.
7. The laws which the Romans made were so good that no one wished to break¹ them.
8. Speak about² me so that he may never accuse me again.
9. The rich helped the poor so that they might not die of³ hunger.
10. He was so hurt that he died.

¹ *Violare.* ² When *about* or *of* means *concerning* use *de*.

³ *Of* here means *by*, denoting cause or instrument. Therefore use simple *abl.*

Exercise 11 [A].

1. He was sent to ask for peace, that the citizens might not die of hunger.
2. The messengers arrived so quickly that no one died.
3. Go away quickly that no one may see you.
4. We defended the walls so well that the enemy retreated, and did not take the city.
5. The snow was so deep that many men died of cold.
6. Set out quickly that no one may see you.
7. Are you brave enough to set out alone?
8. Do not do this, lest you should seem to be a coward.
9. We have made the ditch deep that no one may cross it.
10. The ditch was made so deep that no soldiers could cross it.

Exercise 12 [B].

1. So many weapons were thrown that no place was safe.
2. His shield was large enough to defend him.
3. That no one may be idle, this work has been given to all.
4. They were so cowardly that they retreated, and did not defend the city.
5. Our forces are great enough to repel the enemy.
6. We put him to death that he might not hurt us.
7. He is so brave that he does not fear the enemy, but loves battles.
8. He did the work in such a way that all men praised it.
9. Be brave that we may praise you and call you a friend.
10. He went away so quickly that we never saw him again.

Exercise 13 [B].

1. He sent so few men that we could not defend the walls.
2. We shall return so quickly that you ought not to fear danger.
3. The man who¹ dares to despise his enemies is brave enough to conquer them.
4. No man is so brave that he is never afraid.
5. We have come to help you so that nothing may hinder the work.
6. He bore a shield so that no weapon might hurt him.
7. He bore so big a shield that no weapon could hurt him.
8. They all were put to death so that no messenger might ever return home.
9. I am accused by so many men that I dare not defend myself.²
10. In order never to be conquered never be afraid.

¹ Is qui. Wherever 'the man' or 'men' is equal to 'he' or 'those' translate by 'is.'

² me ipsum.

Exercise 14 [A].

A poor soldier was one day leading a mule laden with gold which had been sent to Alexander¹ the Great. The mule was so tired that it could no longer bear the burden, and the soldier was compelled to carry the gold himself. But by chance Alexander himself was following the man, and he admired his kindness so much that he said, "My friend, try to carry the gold home, for I give it all to you."

Exercise 15 [A].

The enemy advanced quickly to capture the city. There were so few soldiers in the city that they were hardly able to defend the walls. But reinforcements were advancing, and they resolved to resist bravely, that these might arrive and defeat the enemy. The attack was so fierce that the walls were almost taken, but at length the fresh forces arrived, and the enemy retreated. So great was the joy of the citizens that they went to the temples, and gave many gifts to the gods.

¹ Alexander, -dri.

Exercise 16 [A].

The soldiers, who had been marching all day,¹ were so tired that they could scarcely climb the hill. Some, in order to march quickly, threw away their arms; others were so exhausted that their friends carried them. But their courage was so great that at last they came to the top of the hill, and saw the enemy's camp. Here they hid themselves that they might not be seen by the enemy.

Exercise 17 [B].

They had been so often defeated by Caesar that they sent messengers to him and asked for peace. In order that they might not wish to fight again, Caesar asked them for hostages, which they gave him. But the army of the Gauls was so great that Caesar was not willing to remain near them, and he went away. Lest the enemy should follow he led his soldiers very quickly, and before night they came into their camp.

¹ Acc.

Exercise 18 [B].

A Persian,¹ who had been banished from Persia, came to the city of Athens to see Cimon. He brought much gold and silver, in order by presents to make Cimon his friend. "Do you bring this money to buy my friendship?" asked Cimon. "I wish to make you my friend," replied the Persian. "Take away the money," Cimon said, "lest I should think you an enemy. Friendship is not bought and sold."

Exercise 19 [B].

Pyrrhus, the Greek, gave money to Fabricius, the Roman general, that he might betray the Roman army. But no present was great enough to tempt Fabricius. A Greek came to the Roman camp that he might receive a reward, and then kill the king. But so upright was Fabricius that he sent the man back to the king to be punished by him.

¹ *Persian* = *Persa* 1 decl. m. Cimon, *gen.* Cimonis.

Athens = *Athenae*, -arum, f. pl. 'The city of Athens' = 'the city Athens' in Latin, the two nouns being in apposition.

INFINITIVES

Rule 4. The simple use of the Infinitive is as the subject or complement of a finite verb. It thus corresponds to the English verbal noun in *-ing*.

e.g. laborare est orare = *working is praying*.

Here 'laborare' is the subject of 'est,' and 'orare' is the complement, just as, in the sentence 'laborare est difficile,' 'difficile' is the complement. This last sentence we usually translate "*It is difficult to work,*" but the Latin is "*To work is difficult,*" and 'laborare' is a true subject.

All verbs whose meaning is incomplete in itself require a complement, and this is usually in the Infinitive. We call it the **Prolate Infinitive**.

e.g. volo abire = *I wish to go away.*
 conor laborare = *I try to work.*
 possum vincere = *I can conquer.*
 te sino proficisci = *I permit you to depart.*

Exercise 20 [A].

1. Hoping is easier than believing.
2. Those who wish to command ought to learn to obey.
3. He was thought to be a good general.
4. It is the duty of¹ all soldiers to be willing to die for their country.
5. Cease to be idle, and learn to work.
6. We have determined to go to the help of our friends.
7. These men are not accustomed to fight.
8. Did they seem to you to be true friends?
9. The general decided to pitch his camp on a hill.
10. They did not dare to lie.
11. Were you not compelled to leave your home?
12. They do not allow us to remain in the city.

¹ Lat. '*it is of all soldiers*' (Genitive). So with such phrases as '*it is (the part) of . . .*' '*it is (the nature) of . . .*'

Exercise 21 [A].

1. It is (the part) of good citizens to try to help the poor.
2. Learning is easier than teaching.
3. If soldiers are unwilling to march they are punished.
4. He desires to benefit himself alone.
5. The barbarians are said to be very brave.
6. They determined to follow the enemy into the city.
7. It is pleasant to help those who can help themselves.
8. All men ought to think it disgraceful to lie.
9. Some men are accustomed to rule, others to obey.
10. Those who are accustomed to command others ought to learn to obey.
11. They think it foolish to die for their country.
12. All men ought to praise those who seem to be wise.

Exercise 22 [B].

1. I used to learn more quickly than I can learn now.
2. To complain is useless.
3. He never ceases to complain of his friends.
4. We have decided to remain in the plain.
5. He seemed to me to be very brave.
6. Ruling is more difficult than being ruled.
7. If we try to help others, they are willing to help us.
8. I prefer to remain, you to depart.

9. They determined to work that they might not be punished.
10. They were accustomed to go home with their friends.
11. They were compelled to retreat.

Exercise 23 [B].

1. You ought not to desire to be a man.
2. The general determined to set out against the enemy.
3. Speaking is easier than persuading.
4. You ought never to cease to learn.
5. If we desire to learn we can always have masters.
6. Not helping our friends is the same as¹ hurting them.
7. Punish him if he is unwilling to learn.
8. We decided to defend the city.
9. We have been compelled to buy many things which do not seem to be useful.
10. You force me to speak against my will.

¹ the same as = idem ac.

PARTICIPLES

Rule 5. English sentences which require to be translated by participles in Latin are not usually in the Latin form at first. The English has to be *turned*; e.g. "The Greeks, *having captured Troy, burnt it,*" cannot go straight into Latin, because Latin has no Perfect Participle *Active*.

(a) **Wherever possible, make the participle agree with the subject or object.**

e.g. *The Greeks having captured Troy, burnt it.*

= Trojam captam Graeci incenderunt.¹

The chiefs were taken and massacred.

= Capti duces trucidantur.

(b) Wherever this is not possible, use the construction called **Ablative Absolute**; i.e. a Participle agreeing with a Noun in the Ablative, the whole phrase being an Abl. of Manner or "Attendant Circumstances"; e.g. in the sentence "*Having taken the city, he marched on,*" the participle cannot agree with the subject because there is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, nor can '*the city*' be made the object of the verb. We therefore turn it: "*The city having been captured, he marched on*" = Capta urbe progressus est.

¹ Never write such a sentence as "Capta urbe, Graeci eam incenderunt." The Abl. Abs. is only to be used where the participle *cannot* agree with subject or object.

Exercise 24 [A].

1. The army having been defeated the general fled.
2. Regulus having been given up to the enemy was put to death.
3. Having conquered the enemy the general returned home.
4. Having summoned the citizens he spoke as follows.¹
5. The soldiers having been captured gave up their arms.
6. Having collected his forces he led them against the enemy.
7. The Gauls² having thrown away their arms were taken by the Romans.
8. Having taken the messenger they put him to death.
9. Having killed his brother he fled into the woods.
10. The enemy having captured the messengers put them to death.

Exercise 25 [B].

1. Having been made king he tried to benefit the state.
2. Kings having been driven out consuls were elected.
3. The soldiers, throwing away their arms, fled from the battle.
4. Caesar having conquered the Gauls demanded hostages.
5. Our men having taken the chiefs brought (them) to Caesar.
6. Seizing his sword he tried to kill his enemy.
7. Having taken the camp we set it on fire.
8. Having conquered the enemy the soldiers wished to return home.
9. Having set the prisoners free he sent them home.
10. The Gauls having been defeated asked for peace.

¹ haec dixit.² Galli, etc.

Exercise 26 [A].

1. Do not invent a **Passive Participle of Intransitive Verbs**. Saying "Caesare pervento" is as absurd as saying "perventus est" for *he arrived*. Latin having no Perfect Part. Active, the only way to render "Caesar having arrived" is "Caesar quum pervenisset."¹
2. On the other hand remember that **Deponents have Perfect Participles with an Active sense**, though their form is Passive; e.g. locutus = having said, aggressus = having attacked, ratus = thinking, etc.
 1. My horse having stumbled I was caught.
 2. Having said these things the messenger departed.
 3. Having come to the gate of the city they halted.
 4. Having advanced ten miles our men reached the river.
 5. Having seen the enemy's forces our men retreated.
 6. Our men being afraid, the general retreated.
 7. Having halted we pitched a camp.
 8. Being about to die he called his sons.
 9. The enemy having set out we retreated.
10. The Gauls having attacked the walls the city was taken by storm.

Exercise 27 [B].

1. Having reached the gates our men tried to open them.
2. Having opened the gates our men marched in.
3. Having attacked the walls the Gauls took the city by storm.
4. My house having fallen down I went to Caius' house.
5. Having entered the house I called to Caius.
6. Night approaching we pitched a camp.
7. Winter beginning we retreated across the river.
8. His father being about to die he returned home.
9. Having slept in the house he went away early.
10. The messenger having returned brought this answer.

¹ See the first part of Rule 26, p. 144.

Exercise 28 [A].

1. "Saying this, he fled" is a loose way of expressing "Having said this he fled"; and in Latin must be "Haec looutus fugit." The Present Participle always denotes an action going on at the same time as the action of the principle verb, whatever the tense of that verb may be; e.g. Hoc jam moriens dixit=he said this while dying.
2. We must often use participles in Latin where they are not used in English.

(1) Where English uses two simple verbs joined by "and" or "but"; e.g. *Numa died and Tullus became king*=Mortuo Numa Tullus rex factus est; *He took him and slew him*—Captum eum interfecit.

(2) Where English uses phrases with prepositions or conjunctions; e.g. *He was killed while hunting*=interfectus est venans; *on the death of Numa*=mortuo Numa; *after advancing a mile*=mille passus progressus.

(3) Where English uses clauses denoting time, cause, etc.; e.g. *When Tullus was king*=regnante Tullo; *As the soldiers would not follow, he remained*=nolentibus sequi militibus, mansit.

1. On leaving the wood we saw the camp of the enemy.
2. We departed after saying these words.
3. Saying these words he left the camp.
4. The Greeks returned home after the capture of Troy.
5. When Romulus was ruling Rome was a small city.
6. The youth was killed while fighting for his country.
7. The enemy took the messenger and put him to death.
8. They pitched their camp, and fortified it with a rampart.
9. They collected an army and marched against the enemy.
10. Not being able to resist us the Gauls threw away their arms and fled.

Exercise 29 [A].

1. Having made silence he spoke as follows.
2. He died while sleeping.
3. On the death of Remus Romulus became king alone.
4. Seeing the great walls of the city we did not attack it.
5. Having received reinforcements we were able to resist the enemy.
6. During the consulship of Crassus there was peace.
7. He exhorted his soldiers and led them out.
8. After burning the town we departed.
9. After killing his brother he fled into the woods.
10. Being followed by the enemy we did not halt.

Exercise 30 [B].

1. On their return home they were received gladly by their friends.
2. Having gone out of the city the soldiers returned to the camp.
3. He was killed while trying to save his friend.
4. On the approach of night we left the camp and advanced against the enemy.
5. On hearing this the general resolved to retreat.
6. Saying this he threw himself at the king's feet.
7. This is the tenth year from the foundation of Rome.
8. Having killed the Gaul he buried him in a wood.
9. Having set out at the approach of spring they marched against the enemy.
10. He took these presents and gave them to his son.

Exercise 31 [B].

1. They were attacked by the enemy while fortifying a camp.
2. Some having already gone out of the camp it was attacked by the enemy.
3. The enemy attacked some of them when they had gone out of the camp.
4. Caesar having arrived in the camp the soldiers resisted the attacks of the enemy more bravely.
5. With these exhortations he left his men.
6. Having betrayed the town they went away.
7. Leading back the army into the city he demanded hostages.
8. After the banishment of the kings the Romans had consuls.
9. They left the sick in the camp and pursued the foe.
10. He was killed while pursuing the foe.

Exercise 32 [A].

The enemy being now defeated, the general led his men back to the camp, which had been fortified by a rampart. The lieutenant¹ having been left in the camp, had not heard about the battle. When he saw the army at a distance, he went to the top of the rampart to await them. As they approached, he went out and asked them about the fight. But they were so tired that they would tell him nothing, but threw away their arms and went to their tents.²

¹ legatus.

² tabernacula, n. pl.

Exercise 33 [A].

The bread being now all eaten, we were dying of¹ hunger. But the general, calling us together, gave us the bread which he had kept hidden in his house; then, opening the gates, he and the soldiers escaped through the enemy's camp. The wounded only being left [behind] in the city, we gave ourselves up to the enemy. They soon left us, taking away much gold and silver from the city.

Exercise 34 [B].

Seeing the enemy the Gauls crossed the river, and breaking down the bridge waited for Caesar's arrival. Caesar did not wish to fight immediately as his men² were wearied. Marching therefore into the hills he pitched a camp, then came down against the enemy when they had gone out of the camp and were seeking corn. Having conquered them he sold those whom he had captured, and after repairing the bridge returned to the city.

¹ See note 3, p. 13.

² *His men* = sui.

Exercise 35 [B].

Returning to the top of the hill the scout saw the enemy slowly advancing across the plain. Coming to the camp he told these things to the general. Immediately our camp was moved, and we set out to the other side of the river. Having broken down the bridge, so that the enemy might not follow us, we marched the whole day through the woods, and as night approached reached the city of Spoletium. Here we determined to collect provisions and defend ourselves. The walls and gates of the city having been made by the Romans were very strong.

TIME, PLACE, SPACE

Rule 6.

TIME.

To be expressed **without a preposition.**

Time ^(durat.) during ^(temp.) when	Accusative.	e.g. Triginta annos vixit . <i>He lived 30 years.</i>
Time when.	Ablative.	e.g. Tricesimo anno mortuus est. <i>He died in the 30th year.</i>
Time within which.	Ablative.	e.g. Multis annis Romam non venit. <i>For many years he did not go to Rome.</i>

N.B.—Undeviginti annos natus.

Nineteen years old.

Tribus ante (post) diebus.

Three days before (after).

Abhiuc tres dies.

Three days ago.

PLACE.

To be expressed **with a preposition**, except in the case of towns, small islands, domus, rus.

Place whither.	Accusative.	e.g. In urbem, <i>into the city.</i> Athenas, <i>to Athens.</i>
Place whence.	Ablative.	e.g. Ex Italia, <i>out of Italy.</i> Romā, <i>from Rome.</i> Domo, <i>from home.</i>
Place where.	Ablative.	e.g. In urbe, <i>in the city.</i>

But to express *place where* use the *Locative* of towns, small islands, domus, rus, humus; e.g. Romae, Athenis, Corinthi, Rhodi, ruri, humi.

EXTENT OF SPACE.

To be expressed by the **Accusative without a preposition.**

e.g. Tria millia passuum progressus.

Having advanced three miles.

Treddecim pedes altus (latus, longus).

Thirteen feet high (broad, long).

Castra ab urbe aberant millia passuum ducenta.

The camp was distant from the city 200 miles.

Exercise 36 [A].

1. In the country. At home. From Asia. From Athens.
In summer. In the night. All night.
2. He sent the forces to Labienus in the camp.¹
3. Augustus died at Nola (when) 70 years old.
4. Cicero was consul a few years before.
5. I will go into the country next summer.
6. Ten years I stayed at your house.
7. In three days you will reach Athens.
8. I went to Syracuse in winter. The snow was two feet deep.
9. I saw my friend at Carthage three months ago.
10. The snow was deeper in the country than in the city.

Exercise 37 [A].

1. The new ship is fifty feet long.
2. At Messana. At Carthage. At Saguntum. In Sicily.
From Florentia. To Pisae.
3. We shall remain at Athens or Corinth for three years.
4. On that day on which the battle was fought.
5. Nine years afterwards in the night I came home.
6. I shall come back to Carthage in nine days.
7. Do you not wish to go and see your friends in Italy?
8. Setting out from Sicily he went to Brundisium, and afterwards to Greece.
9. Will you be at home?
10. Ten days ago I came back to the city from the country.

¹ In Latin, 'into the camp,' in close connection with the verb of motion. So in **Exercise 37**, sentence 7, 'to go into Italy to see your friends.'

Exercise 38 [B].

1. The Romans were severely defeated at Cannae.
2. For five days the army advanced.
3. Within 14 days help will come to the city.
4. While marching to Athens he delayed at Corinth.
5. Sailing from Asia to Brundisium he perished in a storm.
6. I am going to the country to see my farm.
7. Hannibal waged war in Italy for 14 years.
8. Three days afterwards he was killed by his brother.
9. On the fifth day a storm arose and compelled us to go to the harbour of Tarentum.
10. Will you come to see my house at Florence?¹
11. I am now 19 years old, and have never gone to Athens.
12. The enemy having attacked us at dawn we were fighting the whole day.

Exercise 39 [B].

1. Out of Spain. To Rome. At Florentia. From Alba. Into France. To Zama.
2. The city was so beautiful that I remained in it for many years.
3. I have not seen my friends for many years.
4. They stayed in the country all the summer, and on the approach of winter returned to the city.
5. My friends came from Athens to see me at Corinth.¹
6. He left the camp at sunset and went to the nearest town with one companion.

¹ See note 1 to Ex. 36.

7. On the following day he pitched his camp about seven miles from the enemy.

8. In the evening they reached the river Allia, which is about eleven miles distant from Rome.

9. This river is thirty feet broad and ten feet deep.

10. On that day he returned to his country, from which he had set out (when) fifteen years old.

Exercise 40 [A].

Three days after we crossed a river 45 feet broad. From this river we marched along a good road¹ for four days, and came to Carthage. For a short time we stayed in the city, but for fear of the citizens soon left it and made a camp upon the seashore. Food was brought to the camp from the country every day. At the beginning of spring we marched to Utica; a town which² had been captured by the Romans five years before.

Exercise 41 [B]

For many days we remained within our camp awaiting the enemy's attack. All night we heard their shouts and songs, but by day we did not see them, nor did we dare to go out to explore. Their camp seemed to be pitched about six hundred yards from us, and there was a river between about twenty feet broad. At last we resolved to escape by this river. Accordingly on a dark night we left the camp, and a large boat having been got ready we began to advance up the river without the knowledge of the enemy.

¹ The *way by which* one goes is expressed by the ablative without, preposition.

² In Latin, 'which town.'^{ES}

Exercise 42 [A].*ABLATIVES OF COMPARISON, QUALITY, MEASURE OF DIFFERENCE; WORDS GOVERNING THE ABLATIVE.*

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| (1) Quid mollius undā ? ¹ | <i>What is softer than water ?</i> |
| (2) Stātūrā fuit humili. | <i>He was of low stature.</i> |
| (3) Mu'to
Multis partibus } major est. | <i>It is much greater.</i> |

1. Having gained possession of the enemies' camp, he gave the booty to the soldiers.
2. More citizens were dying of hunger than of disease.
3. My brother was a man of weak body.
4. The wise man is contented with his lot, and performs his duties well.
5. I never saw a house more beautiful than this.
6. Being a man of great courage he remained.
7. Hercules undertook twelve labours of great difficulty.
8. The army, which he has equipped, is much larger than ours.
9. Relying on his wings Mercurius had no need of a ship.
10. He was killed by the arrow which had been shot by the soldier.
11. War was waged much oftener by sea than by land.
12. My brother is two feet taller than I am.

¹ The Abl. of Comparison is only to be used where two things are directly compared with one another by means of a Comparative Adjective. Otherwise use *quam*. The case of the noun following *quam* will be the same as that of the noun corresponding to it in the first part of the sentence.

- e.g.* Facilius est mihi quam tibi. *It is easier for me than for you.*
 Balbi domus quam Caii altior est. *Balbus' house is higher than Caius'*
 Compare with these—
 Facilior est somnus labore. *Sleep is easier than toil.*
 Domus muro altior est. *The house is higher than the wall.*

In these sentences we have direct comparison between the two things denoted by the nouns, and can therefore use the Ablative of Comparison.

Exercise 43 [B].

1. Let us feed on the same food as¹ the soldiers.
2. He is much more like you than Caesar (is).
3. Solon, a man of great wisdom, gave laws to Athens.
4. The walls, which have been built by Balbus, are of great height.
5. We shall be saved more by courage than by our walls.
6. On the march we saw more friends than enemies.
7. No walls are higher than those of² Babylon.
8. I admire this house much more than that.
9. The enemy's forces are a little smaller than ours.
10. We were attacked by the enemy with a shower of darts.
11. He was beaten by the bows which the soldiers used.
12. We crossed a river many feet deeper than the Rhone.
13. Our city is many times larger than yours.

¹ Use the Relative (eodem...quo).

² Omit *those*. So with the words 'that of' in comparisons, e.g. *my house is higher than that of Caius* = *mea domus quam Caii altior est*.

INDIRECT STATEMENT

In the sentence "He said *many things*" the verb governs a noun as direct object. In the sentence "He said *that I was unwise*" a clause has taken the place of a direct object. When in this way a sentence becomes the object of a verb of "saying" or "thinking" we call it an "indirect statement."

When the verb of 'saying' or 'thinking' is in the Passive the 'indirect statement' becomes the subject, e.g. *nuntiatur hostem adesse* = "that the enemy are near" is announced. So with 'impersonals' like *constat* (*it is agreed*).

Rule 6.—When a statement is made dependent on a verb of "saying" or "thinking" the subject of the dependent clause is put in the Accusative, and the verb in the Infinitive.

Verbs of "saying" and "thinking" include all such verbs as *learn, perceive, know, hear, pretend, inform, hope, promise, threaten*—of which **hope, promise, threaten** are always followed by the **Future Infinitive**. The subject of the Infinitive must always be expressed.

"I deny" and "I say that . . . not" are both translated in Latin by **nego**. Never use *dico . . . non*.

EXAMPLES.

DIRECT STATEMENT.

Ille vir bonus est.

He is a good man.

Legiones sequentur.

The legions will follow.

Copiae advenerunt.

Forces have arrived.

INDIRECT STATEMENT.

Putamus illum virum esse bonum.

We think he is a good man.

Dixerunt legiones secuturas esse.

They said the legions would follow.

Senserunt copias advenisse.

They perceived that forces had arrived.

Urbs non capiatur.

*The city will not be taken.*Negant urbem captum iri.¹*They say the city will not be taken.*

Regrediar.

I shall return.

Spero me regressurum esse.

*I hope to return.***Exercise 44 [A].**

1. We know that forces will arrive.
2. They say the king is dead.
3. We have heard that peace has been made.
4. It was reported that the enemy had struck their camp.
5. Messengers say that the city has been taken.
6. We perceived that the king would be killed.
7. It is agreed that the citizens are cowardly.
8. Tell your friend that I am ready.
9. We promised to give Caesar arms.
10. Do you not know that the arms will be taken?

Exercise 45 [B].

1. We promised to give hostages.
2. It was announced that the city had been taken.
3. They say that fresh forces are at hand.
4. We hope that our men will not yield.
5. It is well known that the Gauls are good soldiers.
6. It is announced that a great disaster has been sustained ^{by our men.}
7. It was announced that Caesar had defeated the Gauls.
8. We hope Caesar will be defeated by Ariovistus.
9. They perceived that the camp had been taken by Ariovistus.
10. Did you not think that your friends would come?

¹ For the explanation of this construction see p. 82, note 1.

SE, IPSE

Latin has no Reflexive Pronoun of the 1st and 2nd Persons, but **ipse** may be used as an adj. in agreement with the Pronoun (expressed or understood from the verb); e.g. tu ipse=you yourself, mihi ipsi=to me myself, vos ipsos=you yourselves.

In the 3rd Person **se** is the Reflexive Pronoun, both Masc. and Fem., Sing. and Plu. It has no Nom., and for 'he himself,' 'they themselves' we must use ipse, ipsi in agreement with the subject.

Rule 7. In simple sentences "se" refers to the subject of its own clause. In Indirect Statement (Acc. with Inf.) use **se** with reference to the subject of the principal verb; i.e. the verb of 'saying.' 'Eum,' 'eos' must not be used for the speaker.

The adj. **suus** follows the same rule, and *ejus* must not be used for it.

EXAMPLES.

Ad eum discedite (**vos**) **ipsi**.

Go to him yourselves.

Se sua pecunia liberavit.

He freed himself with his own money.

Ariovistus respondet non **sese** iis sed **eos** sibi bellum intulisse.

Ariovistus replied that he had not waged war on them (the Gauls), but they on him.

Exercise 46.

In the following sentences translate only the pronouns in italics:

1. Cato slew *himself* with *his own* hand.
2. Lentulus *himself* was put to death.
3. He *himself* knows best.
4. Come with me *yourselves*.
5. I sent for *them themselves*.
6. They gave the greatest share to *themselves*.
7. He said *he* did not know *them*.
8. *I myself* told them that *they* would be punished.
9. The king said *he* should set *them* free.
10. The judges replied that *they* did not fix the penalty, but the laws *themselves*.
11. Cato told *his* men that *they* would escape.
12. Who said *he* would give me the money?

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENT

Rule 8.—If the time referred to by the Infinitive is the same as the time of the verb of saying or thinking, the Present must be used. Otherwise use the Perfect or Future according to the tense of English.

The tense of the Infinitive is always the tense that was used by the speaker in Direct Statement; e.g. "He said he was ill." The actual words were, "I *am* ill." Therefore use the *Present* Infinitive.

EXAMPLES.

- (a) Caesar per exploratores cognovit et montem a suis **teneri** et Helvetios castra **movisse**.

Caesar ascertained through scouts that the mountain was being held by his own men, and that the Helvetii had moved their camp.

Exercise 47 [A].

1. Few men knew that the walls had been taken.
2. Have you heard that the king's army is advancing?
3. He does not believe we shall ever finish the journey.
4. He says we shall not finish the journey.
5. Promise that you will not follow me.
6. I hope to give it you within a few days.
7. The soldiers cried out that they had never been conquered, and would not now yield.
8. I pretend to be his friend.
9. I did not know that he had deceived you.
10. They said they had not heard about the king's arrival.
11. We threatened to attack them as they were returning home.
12. Men say that the citizens are very rich.

Exercise 48 [A].

1. They informed the general that hostages would be given by all the states.
2. Our men¹ were told² that the enemy had fortified their camp, and were expecting an attack.
3. It was reported that the Gauls were close at hand.
4. The soldiers all declared that they would never leave their leader.
5. You have promised to come to me in the camp.
6. They declared that reinforcements had been seen, and would soon arrive.
7. I know that they promised to come before sunset.
8. They were so terrified that they did not see that the enemy were charging.
9. Ambassadors had told the king that war was finished.
10. They pretended to have told the king about the disaster.
11. Do not pretend to be wiser than your father.

¹ Nostri alone.

² certiores facti sunt. *To inform* = aliquem certiozem facere (literally 'to make more sure'). *I informed him* = eum certiozem feci. In the Passive 'to be informed,' 'to be told,' 'to hear' = certior fieri. *They will be informed* = certiores fient. Remember that dicor = *I am said*, never *I am told*.

Exercise 49 [B].

1. It is said¹ that the enemy are at hand.
2. News was brought that the enemy were at hand.
3. He was told that the legions would follow as soon as possible.²
4. It is agreed that the traitors were rightly killed.
5. Having been told that the city was taken, we retreated.
6. He promised to give the booty to the soldiers.
7. He said they had never asked him for money.
8. You know that they will not return.
9. The prisoners themselves declared that they were Gauls.
10. They said they were sure that the camp would be taken.

¹ Do not use *dicitur*. Latin prefers the personal construction, e.g. *hostes dicuntur*. . . . Similarly do not use *videtur* for *it seems* where the sentence can be made personal; e.g. *It seems that the ambassadors have returned* = *Legati videntur redisse*.

² *quam primum*. *Quam* with a superlative (adj. or adv.) always has this sense; e.g. *Quam plurimos milites collegit* (*he collected as many soldiers as possible*). *Quam celerrime progressi sunt* (*they advanced as quickly as possible*).

Exercise 50 [B].

1. The general perceived that the enemy were about to attack.

2. It was announced by scouts that reinforcements were coming up.

3. They said he had not given them the promise ~~referred~~.

4. I hope to see you at Rome next year.

5. Having ascertained that the enemy would soon attack them, they began to retreat.

6. Having been told of this disaster they declared that they would retreat.

7. We ourselves noticed that our men wished to yield.

8. Do you not perceive that we are surrounded by the enemy?

9. The messengers tell us that the enemy left their camp two days ago.

10. The ambassadors informed the king that they would give him reinforcements.

Exercise 51 [A].

An old man used to complain to his wife in these words. He used to say that he went to the fields every day, and returned home in the evening tired with work; but that she sat at home idle. The wife replied that she did not wish to be idle, and promised that she would go to the fields the next day. The husband accordingly stayed at home to prepare the supper, but not being skilled in¹ such things he prepared nothing which they could² eat in the evening; and in the morning he said he would rather work and eat than sleep and be hungry. So he went to the fields himself.

Exercise 52 [A].

It was told Philip that the Romans were at hand. Crying out that he had been betrayed he ran out into the forum, and sent some men to throw his treasures¹ into the sea and others to burn the ships. Men who saw him say he was like a madman.² He declared that the passes had been purposely abandoned by his generals, and that he would punish the guilty. At the same time he promised to give a large sum of³ money for every Roman killed in his kingdom.

Exercise 53 [A].

On hearing that⁴ the Roman general had sent **3000** soldiers to besiege the town, the citizens, whose food was already beginning to fail, were greatly alarmed. So they resolved to send ambassadors to the camp to ask for peace. The Romans answered that this would be given when hostages had been surrendered (*abl. abs.*). The Roman general demanded these before night; but the citizens refused⁵ to obey the order: they said that they would rather die than accept such a peace. And accordingly the city was blockaded for four months. Then the Romans withdrew to defend their own territories against the Suevi.

Exercise 54 [B].

At daybreak Leonidas perceived that he had been surrounded by the enemy. Nevertheless, being endowed with great bravery, he resolved to engage in battle and die for his country. Having praised the allies, he sent them all to their homes. Many of the Spartans also he wished to dismiss, but they all

¹ thesaurus. ² madman = *furens* (participle).

³ a large sum of = *multus*.

⁴ Translate by "having been informed that"

⁵ Use *nego* (said they would not . . .).

said they would never leave their king. At length Leonidas perceived that the enemy were approaching, and drew up his men in line of battle to withstand their attack. They all knew that the enemy's forces were so great that there was no hope of escape; but they fought bravely for many hours, and all to a man were killed.

Exercise 55 [B].

When Romulus had returned to the Campus Martius to review the army, a great storm having arisen suddenly, he was hidden by so thick a cloud that the citizens could not see him. Nor was he afterwards seen by any mortal. But on the following day a young man, by name Proculus Julius, came to Rome, and said that Romulus had appeared to him, and had told him that the gods wished Rome to be the capital of the world. Therefore the Romans perceived that they ought to practise the art of war, and become good soldiers, that all men might know that Romulus had spoken the truth.

Exercise 56 [B].

I have many friends, but of them all I think Caius is the cleverest. Once the brother of Caius was accused on account of some offence, and Caius was compelled to give evidence.¹ The accusers wished to make him angry, so that he might deny what he had already said. But he knew that they desired this, and gave his evidence without anger. At length one of the accusers said, "Go away, my friend: you are a very clever man." Caius replied that he wished that he could say the same of them, but that he had sworn to tell the truth.

¹ testimonium dicere.

Exercise 57 A.

PRICE AND VALUE.

The 'Genitive of Value' (*tanti, quanti, minoris, minimi, magni, pluris, flocci, etc.*—which are properly *Locatives*) is only to be used of indefinite value with verbs of *estimating* or *valuing*.

If the price is exactly stated the Ablative of Price (which is really an Abl. of Instrument) must be used.

e.g. *Multis talentis emptam domum nihili aestimat.*

A house bought for many talents he values at nothing.

1. How much do you think this horse is worth?
2. I bought this book for four denarii.
3. Do you value liberty highly?
4. I bought this house at a low price, because Caius thought it of no value.
5. This house cost me 5000 sesterces.
6. He will sell the horse for 1500 sesterces.
7. I am selling my farm for a great sum of money.
8. I do not care a straw for wisdom.
9. A slave can buy his freedom for a talent.
10. I think this worth less than that (is worth).

Exercise 58 [B].

1. Buy a horse for 1250 sesterces.
2. I value this so greatly that I do not wish to sell it.
3. This house cost them a very great sum of money.
4. They set a very high value on virtue.
5. The victory cost Hannibal many men.
6. For how many talents will you sell this slave?
7. How much do you think the slave is worth?
8. Value money less and virtue more.
9. He bought the farm for 9000 sesterces, but now cares nothing for it.
10. For how much money was he liberated?

Exercise 59 [A].

PARTITIVE GENITIVE.

Britannorum fortissimi = *Bravest* { *of*
among } *the Britons.*

Nimis	} virtutis =	Too much	} courage.
Parum		Too little	
Satis		Enough	
Aliquid		Some	

1. I know that they waste too much time.
2. He had too little confidence in himself.
3. You both have sufficient boldness.
4. They do this that the State may not suffer any¹ loss.
5. Three thousand of our best soldiers have perished.
6. Some of the citizens wished to surrender, others to resist.
7. Our country, which was once the greatest in the world, still keeps some of its old strength.
8. Most of you² have shown more courage than wisdom.
9. I think there is some good in all men.
10. Where in the world do you live?

¹ quid.

² Nos has two genitives—nostrum and nostri; vos has vestrum and vestri. Use the forms in -um for Partitive Genitive, the forms in -i for the Objective Genitive.

Exercise 60 [B].

1. Most of our old friends are dead, and some have ceased to be friends.

2. Caesar has always been considered the greatest of the Romans.

3. The Gauls have too much eloquence and too little wisdom. •

4. They said that the Helvetii were the greatest nation in the whole of Gaul.

5. So great a storm arose, that the greater part of the ships were lost.

6. Some of us have lost all hope.

7. You, who have some love for your country, ought not to do this.

8. He was the first to march¹ into this part of the country.

9. I do not consider Crassus the greatest man in our country.

10. Send to our help the best of your ships.

¹ *He, the first* (adj.), *marched*. So "he left last" is *ultimus abiit*.

Exercise 61 [A].*DATIVE VERBS.*

1. He promised me wealth, but he has no money himself.
2. He satisfied me, and I think I can trust him again.
3. The enemy spared those who survived the battle.
4. Labienus was put in command of the army by Caesar.
5. A man who is angry with his friends without a cause does himself more harm than them.
6. This does not seem to me to be a place fit for a camp.
7. It is difficult to heal such a disease.
8. My friend Atticus came out of the city to meet me.
9. Having been put in command of a legion, he took part in many battles in Gaul.
10. The cavalry pressed the Gauls hard in their flight.¹
11. A thousand Gauls threw themselves in our way, and we scarcely held our ground against them.
12. Caesar waged war against the Gauls, but his victories did not please his enemies at Rome.
13. They threatened me with death, but I had not injured them.

¹ 𐌹, *flying*. Use Participle.

Exercise 62 [*B*].

1. Let us declare war immediately against the French.
2. You, who were put in command of the legion, ought to lead us against the enemy.
3. Did your friend marry Claudia ?
4. It is the king's pleasure to entrust the command to you.
5. They made war on their countrymen.
6. The judges threatened the prisoners with tortures.
7. Caesar exacted many hostages from the Aedui.
8. The general has sent these troops to our aid.
9. Who does not prefer freedom to slavery ?
10. I am unwilling to entrust Caius with this money.
11. Labienus, who was at the head of the sixth legion, resisted the onset of the Gauls.
12. They are much more devoted to agriculture than to war.

Exercise 63 [A].

[*Exercises 63-70 are intended for revision.*]

The Greeks valued their liberty so highly that they determined to resist the Persians and never¹ yield to them. Themistocles was put in command of the Greek forces. By his advice the Greeks trusted to their ships, and fought the Persians² by sea. The Greek fleet was near the island of Salamis,³ and most of the leaders wished to withdraw from this place, and leave Athens in the hands of the Persians; for they valued their own safety more than the city of Athens. Then Themistocles declared that he and the Athenians⁴ would sail to Athens with the fleet of two hundred ships. But he was not able to persuade the others

Exercise 64 [A].

Thereupon⁵ Themistocles formed the following⁶ plan to save both Athens and the other States of Greece. He sent a messenger secretly to the king of the Persians to tell him that the Greeks were about to depart. He pointed out that the Persians with their large fleet would easily surround the small forces of the Greeks. There are some who⁷ say that by this advice he wished to please the king, and that he put his own safety before the freedom of his country. But the advice was of great service to Greece; for the ships of the Persians hindered one another,⁸ and the Greeks routed the enemy.

¹ See note 1 on p. 11.

² *Against* the Persians.

³ Salamis, *f.*; Gen., Salaminis; Acc., Salamina.

⁴ Athenae, -arum, *f.*; Athenian = Atheniensis.

⁶ Quo facto.

⁶ *This.*

⁷ Sunt qui, with Subj.

⁸ *One another* here tr. by se.

Exercise 65 [A].

In the battle which Caesar fought in that place with the Gauls he lost many of his men. For when he had arrived at the top of a hill, and had begun to fortify a camp, suddenly the enemy made an attack. The Romans, who were not standing in line of battle, at first were unable to resist, and took to flight; but afterwards Caesar sent the tenth legion, which he had with him,¹ to their aid, and at last the Gauls were driven down to the river. Here, however, they again made a stand, and Caesar himself says that they fought very bravely.

Exercise 66 [A].

When the king was told of this, he sent an officer² with 150 soldiers to take the robbers and bring them to him. On arriving at the place where the robbers were, they found that a very strong camp had been made in a wood, and that all the approaches had been blocked by cutting down trees.³ At length, however, the place was stormed, and the robbers being taken were put to death, but the king pardoned the leader's son, a boy twelve years old.

¹ *secum.*

² Here 'centurio.' The centurion corresponds to the English 'captain' and also to 'sergeant.' If a superior officer (*e.g.* colonel) is meant use *tribunus militum*. If the commander of a separate division is meant (a lieutenant-general) use *legatus*.

³ *Abl. abs.*

Exercise 67 [B].

When the crops began to ripen the general marched through the wood, making use of¹ a guide whom his horsemen had taken prisoner. On his march he sent out scouts to discover the enemy's camp. They having returned informed him that the enemy with their wives and children and a large number of cattle had made a camp in the middle of the marsh, and were awaiting his arrival. When he learnt this he advanced so quickly that he reached their camp at midnight; and such was the bravery of the Romans that few of the Germans escaped in safety.

Exercise 68 [B].

Calenus received a letter from Caesar, who told him that all the harbours and the shore were held by the enemy. On hearing this he recalled all his ships; but one of them, which did not obey his orders, was captured by Bibulus. All the sailors were put to death by the cruel general; he spared neither man nor boy, and hoped by his cruelty to finish the war more quickly. But Calenus pursued his fleet with 40 ships, and defeated him at Oricum three days after the massacre.

¹ usus (utor).

Exercise 69 [B].

The kings of England and Germany declared war against Philip,¹ king of France. They felt sure that they would conquer him, on account of the number² of their troops, and because they held the French forces in small esteem. Nevertheless he defeated them in a great battle at Bovinium. It was a desperate battle,³ and all showed the greatest bravery. It was observed that a certain priest had killed great numbers² of the enemy. The weapon which he used was an iron club. He had chosen this because he declared that a priest ought not to shed human blood,⁴ and by this means his enemies died from the violence of the blow.

Exercise 70 [B].

The French king himself was the bravest knight in his army. He himself was wounded, and his horse was killed under him; but he rose immediately, and led his men again against the enemy. They charged a squadron of Germans, amongst whom was the emperor himself. The Germans, thinking⁵ that their emperor would be taken prisoner, came up to his help, and opened for him a way of escape. Thereupon Philip remarked to his men that they would only see the emperor's back on that day. After the flight of the emperor the French pursued his army, and defeated them with great slaughter.

¹ *Philip* = Philippus.

² 'number,' 'numbers,' meaning 'great numbers,' is always *multitudo*.

³ *atrociter pugnatum est*.

⁴ blood of men.

⁵ *Deponent--reor*.

PASSIVE OF INTRANSITIVE VERBS

Rule 9. Intransitive Verbs cannot be used personally in the Passive, but they can be used impersonally: e.g. Pugnatum est diu = the battle lasted long. Concurritur undique = men run together from all sides. We can often express the same English by an intrans. or by a trans. verb: e.g.

The Romans are helped = succurritur Romanis, or juvantur Romani.

I was commanded = imperatum est mihi, or jussus sum.

I was advised = suásum est mihi, or monitus sum.

N.B.—Remember that all “Dative Verbs” (*i.e.* all verbs that govern the Dative *only*) are Intransitive.

Exercise 71 [A].

1. The rich are envied by the poor.
2. A fierce battle was fought at Cannae.
3. You will not be believed again.
4. You have been advised by many of us.
5. The enemy were resisted for almost three hours.
6. At Rome many criminals are pardoned.
7. You shall be satisfied.
8. I was persuaded by the majority.
9. Many men more ill than you have been healed.
10. Shall such men be favoured among us?

Exercise 72 [B].

1. Is a man believed who has once lied?
2. The work is only hindered by such people.
3. Do not be persuaded by him.
4. Help was brought to the Romans when hard pressed.
5. No man is hurt by advice.
6. They will not be pleased.
7. Orders are given to an army by the general only.
8. What rich man is envied by the wise?
9. Be advised by us.
10. You will be accused and not spared.

¹ Here "such people" may be expressed by "tales" only. Very frequently *people* may be thus omitted or translated by "ii": e.g. *people who lie* = ii qui mentiuntur. "Populus" is only a people in the political sense, a nation.

DIRECT COMMAND OR PETITION¹Rule 10.

Second Person. If positive = Imperative.

If negative = (a) Ne with Perfect Subj.

(b) Imperat. of nolo with Inf.

First and Third Persons. Present Subj., with ne if negative.

EXAMPLES.

Do not buy this horse = $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Hunc equum ne emeris.} \\ \text{Hunc equum noli emere.} \end{array} \right.$

Let us (not) buy this horse = Hunc equum (ne) emamus.

When a command is double, and the second part negative, use **neu** or **neve** instead of *neque*, before the second part.

e.g. *Māneamus in urbe neve discedamus.*

Let us remain in the city and not depart.

Ne iratus sis neve me reliqueris.

Do not be angry or leave me.

¹ This is inserted here for convenience of revision before doing Indirect Command.

Exercise 73 [A].

1. Let us escape to the woods.
2. Follow me into the city.
3. Do not try to escape.
4. Let us go to Rome, and let us not remain here.
5. Let them not return to the city.
6. Do not remain at home, nor fear the storm.
7. Do this that you may be praised.
8. Do not give him a sword, but give him a bow and arrows.
9. Do not let us ask our friends for help.
10. Hold your ground, and do not retreat.

Exercise 74 [B].

1. Take away this shield.
2. Do not bring cavalry, but bring infantry and archers.
3. Let us try to bring help to our friends.
4. Give me the books which I asked you for.
5. Come to me, and do not be afraid.
6. Do not let us help our enemies or¹ injure our friends.
7. Let them remain where they are.
8. Do not despise the poor.
9. Let us die for our country.
10. Do not let slip this opportunity.

¹ In Latin 'nor.' The second half of the sentence is really negative.

INDIRECT COMMAND AND PETITION

In the sentences "He commands ~~the~~ *building* of a bridge," "He demands *the payment* of the money," the verbs 'commands' and 'demands' govern direct objects. But usually the place of this direct object is taken by a clause; e.g. "He commands ~~that~~ *the bridge be built*," "He demands *that the money be paid*." these clauses are "noun sentences," and are as truly the objects of the principal verbs as the nouns 'building' and 'payment' in the first sentences. These object-sentences after verbs of asking and commanding are what we mean by "Indirect Commands."

Rule 11. Indirect Commands are expressed in Latin by *ut* (when positive) *ne* (when negative) with the Subjunctive.

The construction is exactly the same as that of Final Sentences.

Exceptions.—*Jubeo, veto*, take Present Infinitive. Avoid *jubeo . . non*, for which *impero ne* or *veto* must be used.

Neu (*neve*) is used for *neque* in Indirect as in Direct Commands and Final Sentences.

EXAMPLES.

- (a) *Persuadet Rauracis ut una cum Helvetiis profiscantur.*
He persuades the Rauraci to set out with the Helvetii.
- (b) *Pontem, qui erat ad Genavam, jubet rescindi.*
He orders the bridge at Geneva to be broken down.
- (c) *Se gladio transfixit ne fame periret neve ab hostibus caperetur.*
He fell on his sword that he might not die of hunger or be taken by the enemy.

Exercise 75 [A].

1. I asked him to follow me into the streets.
2. I beg of you not to let him escape.
3. He ordered Minucius not to attempt a battle.
4. I will persuade them not to leave me here alone.
5. Caesar had encouraged his men to hold their ground.
6. I forbade your asking him for money.
7. I warn you against despising the friendship of such a man.
8. Caesar demanded that the Germans should not cross the Rhine, nor leave their own territories.
9. The Gauls begged Caesar to spare their town.
10. The journey was so long that he told his men to leave the baggage in the town.
11. I have persuaded him to devote himself to his books.
12. Order the vanguard to halt.

Exercise 76 [B].

1. They have persuaded me to stay at home.
2. Tell your men to follow you.
3. We were asked to bring help to the citizens.
4. I told you not to leave us here alone.
5. They were advised not to leave their lands.
6. I will urge my friends to come to me at Rome.
7. I told the boy not to buy himself a horse.
8. Tell your brother not to cross the river or come into the town.
9. I have ordered the vanguard to halt and wait for reinforcements.
10. He had received such a serious wound that he asked his slave to kill him.
11. They urged their fellow-countrymen not to surrender nor send hostages to the Romans.
12. The people of the town begged Caesar to spare them.

WORDS THAT MAY INTRODUCE STATEMENTS
AND COMMANDS.

Rule 12.—The verbs *moned*, *persuadeo*, *suadeo*, may introduce either **an Indirect statement** or an **Indirect command**. In the former case, of course, they take Acc. with Inf. *E.g.*, in the sentence “I will persuade him **that** this journey is dangerous,” the word “persuade” introduces a statement; but in “I will persuade him **to** abandon this journey” it introduces a command.

EXAMPLE.

Civitati persuasit **ut** de finibus suis **exirent**: perfacile esse totius Galliae imperio potiri.

He persuaded the State to migrate from their territories (Ind. command); *saying that it was easy to become supreme in Gaul* (Ind. statement).

There is a similar ambiguity in the use of the English “tell,” which may introduce either statement or command; *e.g.* “I told him the journey was dangerous,” and “I told him to abandon the journey.”

Exercise 77 [A].

1. He ordered his men¹ to break down the bridge which had been made over² the Rhone.

2. He persuaded his men not to retreat, and warned them that the whole country was in the hands³ of the enemy.

3. Caesar told his men that he was persuaded that the Germans had crossed the Rhine.

4. Cicero set out with the cavalry after telling⁴ the infantry to follow him in three days.

5. Our men were advised to advance with great caution, that the enemy might not attack them off their guard.

6. The prisoners begged Caesar to spare their lives, and send them back to their friends.

7. You will never persuade me that Romans will be conquered by barbarians.

8. So great was the determination of the prisoners that no one could compel them to speak.

9. Were you told that our men had been ordered to lay down their arms?

10. Thereupon he dismissed the council, and ordered them not to assemble again.

11. They knew that Caesar had forbidden them to attack the enemy, but in his absence⁵ they began to prepare for battle.

¹ Sui.² *in*, with Abl.³ *in potestate*.⁴ Abl. Abs. Remember that in this construction *impero* cannot be used. See Rule 9.⁵ Abl. Abs.

Exercise 78 [B].

1. I have been asked to stand for the consulship.
2. I shall forbid their crossing to this side of the river.
3. I warn you that you will be punished.
4. Caesar exhorted the legion with many prayers not to betray him to the enemy, or throw away their last hope of safety.
5. We have been forbidden to plunder the houses.
6. Orders have been sent us to try again to storm the town.
7. I was advised by Caesar not to trust you, or take you with me.
8. Our men were incited to search for the treasure by the promised reward.
9. Catiline is believed to have ordered Rome to be set on fire.
10. Persuade him that it is dangerous to cross the mountain.
11. Divitiacus tried to persuade the Gauls to remain faithful to Caesar, and not to revolt from him.

Exercise 79 [A].

Cincinnatus lived on the other side of the Tiber on a little farm, which he cultivated with his own hands. The messengers, who had been sent by the senate, found him sitting in the fields. They told him that they had come to inform him that he had been appointed dictator, and asked him to set out with them as soon as possible. Thereupon he bade his wife Racilia bring him his toga, in order that he might not displease the messengers of the senate. When it had been brought, he said he was willing to obey their commands, and would go with them at once.

Exercise 80 [A].

A certain¹ king found one of his slaves sleeping and holding a letter in his hand. He read the letter, in which the boy's mother thanked him because he had sent² her money, and begged him to obey his master faithfully. The king put the letter back with gold into the boy's hand, and then told another slave to wake him. At first the boy was frightened, when he saw the gold; but the king told him that good fortune often came to men when sleeping, and bade him give the gold to his mother, and say that the king greatly praised the mother of so good a son.

Exercise 81 [A].

In the evening a spy was caught by the guards at the gate of the town. Being brought to the commander of the garrison he fell down, and besought him with tears to spare him. He said he could persuade many of the besieging army to desert, and promised to assassinate their general. But the commander said he did not wage war in that way; and he ordered the guards to conduct the man to the enemy's camp. At the same time he sent a letter to the general, in which he advised him not to make use of traitors again—for (said he) they are always willing³ to betray their masters to save their own lives.

Exercise 82 [B].

After this battle the Spartan commander sent a messenger to Sparta to tell the citizens that their good fortune had been lost, Mindarus slain, and that the soldiers were dying of starvation. Soon, however, Darius sent his younger son

¹ Quidam, following its noun.

² Verb in Plup. Subj.

³ This sentence is an Indirect Statement; but the word for 'said he' will be omitted in Latin, being understood from 'advised.'

Cyrus to the coast to supply pay to the Spartan sailors. These then attacked the Athenians so suddenly that they easily beat them, and took the whole fleet. At length the Athenians, being compelled by famine, surrendered their city, and became allies of the Spartans.

Exercise 83 [B].

On the next day the English advanced by forced marches with the intention of¹ attacking the French off their guard. But the latter had already learnt by means of² spies that the English were advancing, and had taken up their position on the top of a mound. When the English came within range, the archers began to shoot their arrows at the enemy. But the French general told his men not to fire back, but to allow the English to approach the bottom of the mound. When they were a few paces distant, he ordered his men not to wait any longer, but to get ready their arms. Then when the signal was given the French charged with such force that the English were routed and took to flight.

Exercise 84.

The general vainly tried to persuade his men to follow him through the wood. He told them that the enemy had retreated, and that no one would attack them on the march. But they replied that night was approaching, and that many enemies could conceal themselves behind the trees; and they begged him to allow them to pass the night in the camp. But the general would not allow this, but said that he himself would advance at once even with a few men. The rest he advised to return to the city, and tell their friends that they had been unwilling to march against the enemy.

¹ *Eo consilio ut.*

² *per.*

Exercise 85 [A].*DATIVE OF PURPOSE, OR PREDICATIVE DATIVE.*

Exitio est avidum mare nautis.

The greedy sea is a destruction to sailors.

Hosti ludibrio esse.

To be a laughing-stock to the enemy.

Auxilio Caesari mittitur.

He is sent to the help of Caesar.

These Datives are never qualified by an epithet, except the simplest of quantity; e.g. *magno dedecori esse* = *to be a great disgrace*. They are almost always accompanied by a *Dativus Commodi*, as *nautis*, *hosti*, *Caesari* in the above examples.

1. I shall only be a burden to you.
2. To sound a retreat will serve as a signal for flight.
3. This negligence has brought disgrace upon him.
4. It was to the advantage of the Romans to banish the kings.
5. His punishment was the cause of his death.
6. Let your father's constancy be an example to you always.
7. He sent money to help me while ill.
8. It was to my credit that (quod) you got home safely.
9. This will be a great disgrace to you.
10. He ought not to be hated by you.
11. They persuaded him that such a plan would mean destruction to the whole army.

Exercise 86 [B].

1. Avarice is a great evil to men.
2. This is a great proof of his courage.
3. He left three legions for the protection of the camp.
4. He ordered me to sound the signal for retreat.
5. I think this defeat was a great disgrace to the Romans.
6. Let us try to set a good example to others.
7. I believe this plan will prove the destruction of our army.
8. He was an object of hatred to all good men.
9. It is to your credit to have spared the prisoners.
10. This victory was the salvation of the state.
11. The position itself was a great help to the Gauls.

Exercise 87 [A].*ABLATIVES OF ORIGIN, SEPARATION, ASSOCIATION.*¹

- (1) Jove natus = *Son of Jupiter.*
 (2) Libera nos metu = *Free us from fear.*
 (3) Divitiis abundat = *He has plenty of money.*

1. Having been banished from his country, he said he was freed from her laws.

2. He was descended from kings, but he did not enjoy kingly power himself.

3. The exiles were compelled to depart from their land.

4. The king was persuaded to set free the captives from prison.

5. Not only was he free from fault, but he also deserved praise.

6. Being the son of such a father, all the people obeyed him willingly.

7. He lived so far from the city, that even his friends did not see him often.

8. The slaves could not be persuaded to speak even by tortures.

9. When kings were banished from Rome, the people were full of joy.

10. Men are often injured even by praise.

11. Not only does the island abound in fruits and flowers, but it is inhabited by a race descended from the gods.

¹ Earlier exercises on the Ablative are given on pages 36, 37.

Exercise 88 [B].

1. This victory has freed us from all fear.
2. The camp was pitched on a hill not far from the town.
3. Even good men are not always free from blame.
4. Being descended from a noble race, he tried to set an example to the rest of the citizens.
5. Not only the men, but also the women and children were banished from their country.
6. The soldiers were ordered to desist from the siege.
7. Even safety will not induce me to live far from the city.
8. This land abounds in all kinds of¹ riches.
9. We were compelled not only to depart from the city, but also to give up all our goods.
10. They were begged by all of us to set free the captives from prison.
11. These people were rich both in cattle and money.
12. He left the city in a passion.

¹ all.

Exercise 89 [A].

ABLATIVES OF RESPECT AND MANNER.

- (1) Numero superiores = *Greater in number.*
 (2) Summa diligentia naves armare = *To fit ships with great care.*

The Ablative of Manner must have an epithet, except in a few words: e.g. jure (rightly), injuria (wrongly), fraude (treacherously), silentio (in silence), etc. If there is no epithet use cum: e.g. cum diligentia naves armare.

1. The troops were few in number, but they fought with great bravery.
2. He replied in a loud voice that he would never yield.
3. They were told that the enemy were advancing in great disorder.
4. Having armed as many men as possible,² they charged the enemy with the utmost fury.
5. I have been wrongfully accused of treachery¹ by my private enemies.
6. They said they had been accustomed to live in the fashion of their ancestors.
7. These traitors were rightly put to death with all speed.
8. He is younger than his brother, but excels him in wisdom and talents.
9. You, who are an Englishman by birth, ought to resist bad laws with all your power.
10. I had not even heard that they were inferior to us in numbers.
11. By your leave I shall ask him to come home with me as often as possible.²
12. Not even you, he said, will persuade me that Caesar was rightly killed.

¹ Gen. of *crime*.

² See note to Ex. 49.

Exercise 90 [B].

1. The Athenians joined battle with the utmost fury.
2. What he has learnt with care he values most highly.
3. They are superior in skill, not in courage.
4. He spoke this with sorrow.
5. In everything else they employ Greek characters.
6. I believe that we ought to act according to the customs of our ancestors.
7. With your leave I will tell the slaves to withdraw.
8. He seems to have been rightly punished.
9. To live in the fashion of rich men seems pleasant to you who are poor.
10. He replied in great anger that his enemy had lied.
11. The consul with a smile said, "Go home and do not come here again."
12. We are inferior to the enemy in numbers, but our men excel others in courage.

Exercise 91 [A].

[Exercises 91-98 are intended for revision.]

Numa being dead, Tullus Hostilius was made king. While he was king war arose between the Romans and Albans. In order that the war might be finished without great loss, the kings ordered that three Romans should fight for their fatherland against three Albans, and decide the contest. The fight lasted a long time, but at last two of the Romans were killed, and all three Albans were wounded. The third Roman, whose name was Horatius, pretended to flee, and induced the Albans to pursue him. In following him they were separated, and Horatius, turning round, killed them in turn.

Exercise 92 [A].

Eurystheus then set¹ Hercules the eleventh labour, which was harder than those which we have mentioned above. For he ordered him to take away the golden apples from the gardens of the Hesperides.² These were nymphs of remarkable beauty, who lived in a distant land, and some golden apples had been entrusted³ to them by Juno. Many men had before this tried to take away these apples; but it was a difficult thing to do,⁴ for the garden in which the apples were was surrounded by a high wall on all sides. Moreover a dragon,⁵ which had a hundred heads, guarded the gate of the garden carefully by day and night.

Exercise 93 [A].

Hearing that the Belgae were conspiring against the Romans, Caesar determined to go himself without delay to central Gaul with two legions, ordering the rest to follow in a few days. On his arrival the Remi, who live on the borders of Gaul, sent ambassadors to say that they were willing to give hostages, and help the Romans with corn. They said that the rest of the Belgae were under arms, and that the Germans had joined them. On hearing this, Caesar promised to come with all possible speed to the help of the Remi, that having joined their forces they might repel the invasion of the Germans.

¹ proponere.² Hesperides, -um.³ committere.⁴ factu (supine).⁵ draco, onis, *m.*

Exercise 94 [A].

The Romans, having set out about the third watch, advanced with great caution, for they had been informed that the enemy were close at hand. They advanced until late in the night, and then were told to pitch their camp. In the middle of the night shouts were heard on all sides, and they saw that great forces of the enemy were making an attack. So they took up their arms as quickly as possible to repel the onset. But when the enemy perceived that they had not been able to attack our men off their guard, the signal for retreat was given, and they withdrew.

Exercise 95 [B].

Louis¹ could not at this time besiege Tunis,¹ because he had not received reinforcements from his brother Charles,¹ King of Sicily; and meanwhile his army was attacked by a disease which carried off the greater part of his soldiers in a few days. The king himself was seized with the disease, and felt that he would die of it. But, to sustain the courage of his soldiers, he performed all the duties of a king, and attended in every way to the safety of the camp. But at last he was compelled to remain within his tent, and before long² died, after telling his men never to abandon the siege.

¹ *Louis* = Ludovicus. *Charles* = Carolus. For *Tunis* use Carthage.

² Before long = mox.

Exercise 96 [B].

Nothing had been heard of the army for many months, and the citizens began to think that it had been defeated and all their fellow-countrymen killed. The women used to go every day to the temples, and pray the gods to send them back safely their husbands and sons. At last, when winter was approaching, and all had begun to give up hope, a messenger was seen at a distance who was approaching the city with great speed. The citizens all rushed out to meet him, and implored him to tell them without delay about the army. So tired was the messenger by his journey that at first he could not speak; but at length he said that the army had both won many victories and taken many towns of the enemy, and that the soldiers hoped in a short time to return home with a great quantity of booty and many prisoners.

Exercise 97 [B].

As the people of Veii¹ often made incursions² for the sake of plunder, the Romans were scarcely able to defend their own territories. Their soldiers went home to their fields in the spring to sow, and in the autumn to gather the harvest, at which times the Veientes did a great deal of harm to³ their lands. At last the Fabii promised the Senate that they would be under arms the whole year, and undertake the whole war themselves. The Senate thanked them, and going out from Rome they made a camp near the river Cremera. For a little time they checked the Veientes, but at length they were surrounded, and slaughtered to a man.

Exercise 98 [B].

We set out from Moscow⁴ about the third watch, so that no disturbance might be excited by our friends. I never expected to see my brothers again. For thirty-three days we marched along a road covered by snow a foot deep. Sometimes one of us fell down, and was unable to move further. Our guards did not try to urge him on, for they knew well that the wolves would have him for⁵ their prey before the next day. I now often envy those who were thus left on the road, and prefer death to the evils which daily press upon me. I am compelled to work, but that is the least of my ills; I am compelled to see the sufferings of the women who with us dared everything for the sake of liberty.

¹ Veientes.² Abl. Abs.³ *Harmed much.*⁴ Moscova.⁵ pro, or simple acc. in apposition.

GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES

Distinguish the Gerund and Gerundive.

(1) The Gerund is a Verbal Noun of the Active Voice, corresponding to the English verbal nouns in *-ing*; not to be confused with the Present Participle in *-ing* which is really an Adjective.

(2) The Gerundive is a Verbal Adjective of the Passive Voice.

Rule 13.—A. The oblique cases of the Gerund are used simply as the cases of a Noun. But the Accusative can only be used governed by a Preposition.

e.g. Acc. natus ad regendum = *born to rule.*
 Gen. cupidus discendi = *desirous of learning.*
 Dat. studuit discendo = *he was devoted to learning.*
 Abl. (in) discendo sapientior fio = *by learning I become wiser.*

When the Gerund is in the Genitive case or the Ablative without a Preposition it may take a direct object.¹

e.g. Gen. pacem petendi causa = *for the sake of seeking peace.*
 Abl. scribendo fabulas = *in writing stories.*

B. But when the Verbal Noun governs a direct object² instead of the Gerund we generally use the Gerundive. This attracts the object into its own case, but agrees with the object in number and gender. This construction is known as "Gerundive Attraction."

e.g. Acc. ad pacem petendam = *in order to ask for peace.*
 Gen. pacis petendae causa = *for the sake of asking for peace.*
 Dat. legibus mutandis studuit = *he was eager for changing the laws.*
 Abl. in scribendis fabulis = *in writing stories.*

¹ Use the Gerund especially where by using the Gerundive we should get two genitives ending in *-orum* or *-arum* together.

² The Gerundive being *Passive*, none but transitive verbs (governing a direct object in the Acc.) can have a Gerundive. But *utendus*, *potiundus*, *fruentus*, can be used from *utor*, *potior*, *fruo*.

Exercise 99.

The art of writing.	The signal for advance. ¹
The art of writing letters.	The signal for striking the camp.
By obeying the laws.	The desire of having riches.
By changing the laws.	By dying.
For the sake of pleasing our friends.	For the purpose of preserving the state.
For the sake of saving our friends.	For the purpose of helping the state.
In order to injure the Gauls.	For saving the king.
In order to defeat the Gauls.	For serving the king.

Exercise 100 [A].

1. We have done this for the sake of helping our friends.
2. By teaching others we learn ourselves.
3. By learning letters we are able to enjoy reading.
4. They hastened to Rome for the purpose of defending the city.
5. Are you not desirous of saving your friends?
6. The Romans became great through their desire to obey the laws.
7. The art of ruling others is not easily learnt.
8. For the sake of winning honour we suffer much pain.
9. An opportunity has been offered for fighting.
10. This seems a good opportunity for defeating the enemy.

¹ When the Gerund or Gerundive depends on a substantive, put it in the Genitive Case.

Exercise 101 [A].

1. Caesar sent cavalry to bring help to the allies.
2. The officers sent their men to forage in all directions.
3. By obeying the laws we show that we are desirous of preserving our state.
4. He gave his men the signal to advance.
5. The signal was given to advance the standards.
6. The Athenians sent men to Delphi to consult the god.
7. For the sake of pleasing their friends the Senate did many disgraceful things.
8. He sent messengers to the Aedui to demand hostages from them.
9. No opportunity was left them for retreating.
10. They are anxious to devote themselves to letters.

Exercise 102 [B].

1. They were led on by the hope of taking the city.
2. I was induced to do this for the sake of pleasing the soldiers.
3. We were sent to ask for help.
4. They were sent to bring help to the allies.
5. Time is often wasted in writing books.
6. By obeying wise laws the Roman state became great.
7. The people of this city seem anxious to change their laws.
8. Let us not let slip this opportunity of winning a victory.
9. I am anxious to consult your interests.
10. Caesar was anxious to exact hostages from the Gauls.

Exercise 103 [*B*].

1. Let us not talk of flying, for only by holding our ground shall we conquer.
2. To save his country a man ought always to face death.
3. How many of us are fit for commanding an army?
4. He gave the signal for crossing the river.
5. In our zeal for pursuing the cavalry we advanced too far.¹
6. For learning one needs² talent and a great desire of knowledge.
7. We were sent for to defend the king from harm.
8. A great cause of crime is the desire of having wealth.
9. Officers were ordered to enter the citadel to receive the arms which the enemy had promised to give up.
10. For the sake of filling the ships and sailing at once they bought merchandise at a great price.
11. They are here to ask for pardon.

¹ Comparative.

² *One needs* = *opus est*.

SUPINES

Besides the Gerund there is another Verbal Noun in Latin called the Supine. It only has two cases—an Acc. in -um, and an Abl. in -u.

Rule 14.—The Supine in -um can only be used to express purpose after Verbs of motion. It may govern an object.¹

The Supine in -u can only be used after Adjectives,² and corresponds to an Infinitive following an Adjective in English, e.g. "a question *hard to answer*."

EXAMPLES.

Abii dormitum = *I went away to sleep.*

Venerunt pacem petitum = *They came to ask for peace.*

Mirabile dictu = *wonderful to relate.*

¹ The Future Infinitive Passive is made up of the Supine with *iri*, so that in the sentence 'Dixerunt nos interfectum iri,' *interfectum* really governs *nos*, being a supine of purpose after *iri*.

² Also certain indeclinable nouns used as adjectives, e.g. *fas* (right), *nefas* (wrong).

Exercise 104 [A].

1. It is easy to say, but difficult to do,
2. They say that the city will not easily be captured.
3. Go out to play.
4. Do not always eat what is pleasant to eat,
5. The story is a strange one to tell,
6. Send him to pay the money at once,
7. The general told the officers to send some men to forage,
8. Fire is dangerous to touch.
9. They left Rome to found a new colony,
10. All agree that the city will never be surrendered,

Exercise 105 [B].

1. Aeneas had gone away from the camp to ask for help.
2. I do not believe that the money will be paid.
3. It is not lawful to do this.
4. The mother and wife of Coriolanus were sent to him to ask pardon on behalf of the city.
5. I shall go to bed soon.
6. They often do things disgraceful to relate.
7. I hope the soldiers will be sent home again.
8. The story is easy to tell.
9. Send men to give an answer.
10. He spoke with a voice difficult to hear.

Exercise 106 [A].

Our men saw that they were surrounded on all sides; and no opportunity being left for retreating, they resolved to charge with all their might in the hope of striking terror into the enemy. They knew that they had been brought into these dangers by delaying too long¹ before, and they hoped that by fighting bravely now they would force the enemy to give ground. Therefore, when the signal for advance was given, they ran forward with a loud shout against that part of the line which seemed weakest.² The enemy were thrown into such confusion³ by this unexpected attack that their line was broken at once, and no one resisted our charge.⁴

Exercise 107 [A].

A messenger had been sent to France to ask for help, and to invite French troops to Ireland. Arms and money were promised for the purpose of assisting an Irish army. These were conveyed⁵ by a French ship, and a hundred men assembled on the shore to receive the arms which it was going to land.⁶ But in a storm two of their boats had been broken, and in repairing them time was wasted.⁷ Meanwhile, to scatter the rebels, a troop of horse had been sent out from Cork, at the sight of whom⁸ the rebels fled in all directions; and to effect their own escape the French sailors threw the arms overboard⁹; they lie sunk¹⁰ in the harbour to this day.

¹ Comparative of *diu*.

³ *were so disturbed* (perturbare).

⁵ *convey by sea* = transportare.

⁷ Use Historic Present.

⁹ *e navi projicere*.

² *tenuis*.

⁴ *them charging*.

⁶ *expositura erat*.

⁸ *Abl. Abs.*

¹⁰ *submersus*.

Exercise 108 [B].

The French general was unwilling to attack us at close quarters, because his troops were inexperienced in battle, and he thought they would fight best (when) sheltered¹ by ramparts. Moreover, three years before his troops had been unable to resist the English hand to hand, but having been withdrawn into the town, had defended the walls obstinately. The recollection of that time and the desire to prolong the war induced him to remain where he was. However, in order to give the Belgians² an opportunity of deserting us, he sent out troops of cavalry as far as our outposts. But for fear of this we employed no Belgians as sentinels. For throughout the whole year we were expecting every day they would desert us.

Exercise 109 [B].

The Athenians hoped that a Spartan army would march into Boeotia, and had taken no measures³ to save their families and property. Therefore they saw with the utmost fear and dismay that the Barbarians were advancing with all their forces for the sake of attacking their city. It was evident that in six days Xerxes would be at Athens, and this seemed a very short time for removing the population of a whole city. But they knew that it was of the greatest importance⁴ to them to accomplish this, and before his arrival they had safely removed all who were willing to leave their homes. Some were taken to Aegina, others to Troezen;⁵ but many could not be induced to proceed farther than Salamis.⁶

¹ tectus = covered, in the sense of sheltered; opertus = covered, in the sense of hidden.

² Belgae.

³ 'had done nothing.'

⁴ Maximi interesse = to be of the greatest importance.

⁵ Troezen, Gen. Troezenis f.

⁶ Salamis, Gen. Salamiuis, Acc. Salamina f.

DIRECT QUESTIONS¹

Rule 15. Direct Questions may be asked without any special Interrogative word, but they are frequently introduced

(a) by Interrogative Pronouns or Adverbs, such as **quis**, *who?* **quando**,² *when?* **ubi**, *where?*

(b) by Interrogative Particles. These Particles are in Single Questions **-ne** (enclitic), **nonne** (expecting answer "yes"), **num** (expecting answer "no"); in Double Questions **utrum . . . an**, **-ne . . . an**, **utrum . . . annon**.

EXAMPLES.

(a) **Caesarne** ad castra advenit?

Has Caesar reached the camp?

(b) **Nonne** Caesar ad castra advenit?

Has not Caesar reached the camp? Surely Caesar has reached the camp?

(c) **Num** Caesar ad castra advenit?

*Caesar has not reached the camp, has he?*³

(d) **Utrum** Caesar (or **Caesarne**) ad castra advenit **annon**?

Has Caesar reached the camp or not?

[N.B.—Do not append the **-ne** to an unemphatic word.]

¹ This rule is inserted here for convenience of revision before doing Indirect Questions.

² *When* in questions is never *quum* but *quando*. Notice also that *where* is often used in English for *whither*, and in this sense must be translated by *quo*.

³ Notice the form of the English. "Has he?" "is he?" "isn't he?" etc., is only our way of showing what answer we expect, and is fully represented in Latin by the *nonne* or *num* at the beginning of the sentence.

Exercise 110 [A].

1. Did you say that you would come ?
2. Were you or your brother the first to arrive ?
3. What sort of country do you live in ?
4. Surely you do not hope to see him again ?
5. Where have you come from ? Where are you going to ?
Where have you decided to live ?
6. Do you not believe that this loss will increase the panic ?
7. How many books have you ?
8. How often have you seen him, and when do you expect him to return ?
9. Have you determined to accept these terms or not ?
10. How great is the army of the enemy, and who commands it ?
11. What plan have you formed now ?

Exercise 111 [B].

1. Is it easier to command or to obey ?
2. Have you seen the horse which I gave your brother ?
3. How many times have you been to France ?
4. Surely you do not think me worthy of blame ?
5. They did not ask you to go to Rome, did they ?
6. How large is the house in which you live ?
7. Which of these two books do you prefer ?
8. Why do you prefer England to France ?
9. What plan have you formed now
10. How great is the army of the enemy, and who commands it ?
11. Where did you buy this horse ? Where did you send the letter ? Where did these ships come from ?

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

In the sentence "He asked *what I was doing*" the clause 'what I was doing' is really the object of the verb 'asked.' In the sentence "*What he is doing* is uncertain" the clause 'what he is doing' is really the subject of 'is.'

When a direct question becomes thus the subject or object of a verb we call it an *Indirect Question*.

Rule 16.—A clause expressing an Indirect Question in Latin always has its verb in the Subjunctive.

The principal verb may be any such word as *ask, know, doubt, consider, tell, etc.*

Primary Tenses.

{ Rogat ¹	} quid	{ agam
{ Rogabit		{ acturus sim }
{ Rogavit		{ egerim ² ✓ }
{ He asks	} what	{ I am doing
{ He will ask		{ I am going to do }
{ He has asked		{ I did }

Historic Tenses.

{ Rogabat	} quid	{ agerem
{ Rogavit		{ acturus essem }
{ Rogaverat		{ egissem }
{ He was asking	} what	{ I was doing
{ He asked		{ I was going to do }
{ He had asked		{ I had done }

In the above examples it will be noticed that we supply a **Future Subjunctive** by what is called the **periphrastic conjugation**, *i.e.*, the Fut. Participle with *sim* in Primary, *essem* in Historic sequence.

e.g. Nescio quando **venturi sint**

I do not know when they will come.

Nesciebam quando **venturi essent**

I did not know when they would come.

The interrogative particles are the same as in direct

¹ The Imperative is a Primary tense—

Roga quid { agat } = Ask what { he is doing }
 { acturus sit } { he is going to do }
 { egerit } { he did }

² The Perfect represents a completed action. Therefore use the Perf. Subj. when the governing verb is primary and the dependent verb relates to an action completed in past time, *e.g.*—

Nescio quomodo mortuus sit = I do not know how he died.

questions (whether single or double). But in indirect questions *num* does not necessarily expect the answer 'no,' and *necne* must be used for *annon*. "If" meaning "whether" introducing a question must never be translated *si*, but in single questions by *num*, in double questions by *utrum* } . . . *an*. "When" in questions is *quando*, never *quum*.

Exercise 112 [A].

1. Tell me why you did that.
2. We have not been told when reinforcements will arrive.
3. It was doubtful if they would arrive before night.
4. We did not know where our friends had gone, nor where we should find them.
5. It is uncertain whether we shall see him again.
6. I was not told whether I ought to remain or go away.
7. Tell me where you have come from.
8. I do not know how I ought to do this.
9. Have you heard what plan the general has formed?
10. I was told how bravely our men had fought.

Exercise 113 [A].

1. I have not heard when he arrived.
2. It is doubtful whether we ought to do this or not.
3. I do not know if he told the truth.
4. It is hard to say whether this was done on purpose or not.
5. I was not told how I ought to answer.
6. I cannot say how often I have been asked to come.
7. Nobody seems to know how great the enemies' forces were.
8. It was doubtful how many soldiers would arrive.
9. We had not been told what sort of man he was.
10. Can you tell me if he was rightly punished?

Exercise 114 [B].

1. Nobody knows whether he said that or not.
2. Have you heard which of the two was elected consul?
3. The soldiers did not know what plan the general had formed.
4. He said he did not know if Crassus had been put in command of the army.
5. It is uncertain how many men he is in command of, and where he has taken up his position.
6. We asked them who they were, where they lived, where they came from, and where they were now going.
7. I cannot tell you when they have promised to come.
8. It is doubtful how he is able to do such things.
9. We, who are old, understand how happy are the young.
10. I do not know whether you deserve praise or blame.

Exercise 115 [B].

1. He wants to know what I am going to do to-morrow.
2. It matters a great deal¹ whether they intend to send out cavalry or infantry.
3. We did not know whether the enemy were going to attack in the evening or late in the night.
4. It was doubtful what news the messenger would bring.
5. Let us ask if one regiment will be enough.
6. When the enemy would cross the river was quite uncertain.
7. Tell me if your father is dead.
8. It makes a great difference whether he bought the horse at a low price or not.
9. Have you heard if he has been persuaded to return?
10. It is uncertain whether he will hinder us more than he will help us.

¹ maximi interest.

Exercise 116 [A].

N.B.—Abstract nouns should generally be translated by concrete expressions; e.g.—

What is the *character (nature)* of the island? = Qualis est insula?

What is the *size* of the island? = Quanta est insula?

What are the *numbers* of the enemy? = Quot sunt hostes?

Their *decision* is = constituerunt.

What is your { *reason* for doing this? } = Quo consilio id agis?
 { *intention (object)* in doing this? }

1. The general tried to discover the numbers and intentions of the enemy.....
2. Have you been able to discover his reason for doing this?
3. Nobody seemed to understand their object in asking for such terms.
4. I almost think we ought to retreat.
5. They had not heard the decision of the king.
6. It was doubtful where our friends were, and when they would come to meet us.
7. I rather think he has been advised to depart.
8. He sent me to discover the nature of the island.
9. It is uncertain where they started from, and when they will reach the city.

Exercise 117 [B].

1. I could not discover his reason for saying that.
2. We cannot find out the size of the enemy's camp.
3. I did not tell him by what road we should march.
4. The generals did not inform the soldiers of their decision.
5. Spies were sent forward to learn what was going on in the enemy's camp.
6. Can you tell me how many miles the town of Veii is distant from Rome?
7. We could not easily discover the numbers of the enemy.
8. Do you know the destination of these travellers?
9. I almost think they have been compelled to retreat.
10. We could not discover their reason for returning home.

Exercise 118 [A].

It is said that a certain prophetess brought nine books to Tarquin,¹ king of Rome, and asked him if he wished to buy them. The king asked for what price she was willing to sell them; to which she replied that she would sell them for three hundred pieces of gold. The woman went away, but afterwards she returned with six books. Tarquin asked where she had left the others, and she replied that she had burnt them, but that she would sell him these for the same price. Tarquin would not buy them, and she again left him. But once more she returned with only three books, and asked whether he was willing to buy these at the same price or not.

Exercise 119 [A].

The king, who wondered why she had returned so often, now asked his senate whether he ought to keep them. They first asked him what sort of books they were, and if the prophetess had shown them to him. The king replied that she had said nothing, but that she had burnt six books out of² nine, and now offered three at the same price. It seemed doubtful to the senators what they ought to do, but at last they advised the king to buy the books. Then the woman, having received the money, advised the Romans to keep the books very carefully, and went away.

¹ Tarquinius.

² de.

Exercise 120 [A].

The story is told of King Tarquin that he once determined to add new companies¹ to the Roman knights. Attius the augur said it could not be done. Moved by anger the king demanded that he should show by a sign what the gods wished. Attius replied that he would tell the king what he had in his mind. But Tarquin said, "Tell me rather whether that which I have in my mind can be done." "It can be done," said Attius. Then the king bade him cut a whetstone² in two, for he said he was thinking of that. Without any delay (so they relate³) Attius cleft it with a razor.⁴

Exercise 121 [B].

In the following year Cleon was sent to Macedonia to recover the cities which had been taken by the Spartans. He first marched to Amphipolis, and encamped on rising ground near the city. In the meanwhile Brasidas, the Spartan general, who knew what sort of man Cleon was, resolved to deceive him by a trick. He ordered his men not to show themselves on the wall, but to conceal themselves behind the ramparts. Meanwhile he sent out spies to discover how large the forces of Cleon were, and if reinforcements were coming. These men brought back word that the army of the enemy was small, and was not drawn up carefully. Then Brasidas ordered his men to throw open the gates and attack the enemy at once. The Athenians, who did not trust their general, took to flight, and most of them were killed.

¹ centuriae.² cos, cotis f.³ ut ferunt.⁴ novacula.

Exercise 122 [B].

The prisoner was brought before the king, who asked him where he had concealed his money. To this the man replied that he had indeed been rich once, but that now all his money had been taken away from him by the soldiers, and that nothing was left. The king asked the soldiers if this was true, but they all declared that they had not taken the gold, and did not know where the prisoner kept it. Then the king said that he would discover by means of tortures who was telling the truth; but the prisoner, being overcome by fear, asked if the king would pardon him when the money was given up.¹ The king promised to do this, whereupon the prisoner said he would show them at once where he had carried the money.

Exercise 123 [B].

I once went to the house of a celebrated man, who had formerly been a friend of mine, to ask if he would help me in a matter which I had in hand.² The servant (slave) said he was not at home, but as I had caught sight of my friend, I knew the fellow³ lied. Some days after the great man⁴ came to my house, and I, having no servant,⁵ opened the door to him myself. On seeing him I exclaimed, with unmoved countenance, "He is not at home." In astonishment my friend asked whether I was mad. To which I replied, "I believed your servant when he told lies about you. Are you not willing to believe me when I speak about myself?"

¹ abl. abs.² *undertaken* (suscipere).³ homo—often contemptuous.⁴ ille.⁵ 'to whom there was no servant.'

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES IN INDIRECT STATEMENT, ETC.

Rule 17. All clauses which are subordinate to an indirect statement or command or question have their verbs in the subjunctive.

EXAMPLE.

Ariovistus respondet se non in eas partes Galliae venire
audere quas Caesar possideret.

*Ariovistus replied that he did not dare to come into those parts
of Gaul which Caesar held.*

¶ Exercise 124 [A].

It was the custom of the Falisci to send their children to a schoolmaster to live with him. When the Romans were waging war with the Falisci, this schoolmaster thought that he would please the Romans if he gave them these children as hostages. He therefore purposely led them, without the knowledge of the citizens, to the Roman camp, and offered them to the general. The latter, however, asked him how he had dared to betray children who had been committed to his care, and threatened him with severe punishment. Then he told the children to take such rods as their master was himself accustomed to use, and with these to drive him to the city.

Exercise 125 [A].

The news reached¹ Rome that their army had been defeated, and that of the two consuls who were in command one had been killed and the other was a fugitive. At first the whole city was full of panic and grief. But soon the Senate assembled to take measures² for the safety of the State. They decreed that those who were able to fight should go with the women and children to the capitol; but they declared that they themselves, who were old men, and unable to bear arms, would remain in the city. The Gauls found these old men sitting in silence, and clothed in their state robes.³ At first they wondered greatly, but finally they approached the Senators, and a soldier stroked the long beard of one of them with his hand. The Senator, being enraged, struck the man, whereupon the rest of the Gauls slew all the Senators.

¹ *to bring news* = *afferre nuntium*. ² = *consula* ³ *toga laticlavia*.

Exercise 126 [B].

Solon, the wisest of the Athenians, went once to visit Croesus at Sardis.¹ You have all heard how these two men became friends, and discussed many things together.² But the story is worthy of³ being told again. Croesus considered that that man was most fortunate who had great power and riches, and who could do whatever he wished; and he thought that he himself was such a man. He therefore showed Solon all his gold and silver, and told him how many nations he ruled. He then asked him whom he considered the happiest of mortals. He was sure that Solon would answer that he who ruled the city of Sardis and such a great kingdom was the happiest. But Solon replied that two young men, Cleobis and Biton, were the most happy.

¹ Sardes pl. Gen. Sardium. Solon, Solonis.

² 'inter se,' which often translates words like 'together,' 'mutually,' 'one another,' etc.

³ digna quae, with subjunctive.

Exercise 127 [B].

Croesus said he had never heard of these men, and asked Solon who they were. The latter replied that they were two youths of great piety, whose mother was a priestess. [He said that] when she wished to go to the temple the oxen which used to draw her cart had died, and that her two sons had drawn her there instead of the oxen; that therefore she had prayed to the gods to give them their best gift, and in the night they had both died. By this story Solon wishes to prove that those who are alive must not be accounted¹ happy, since all are liable to misfortune; but that those who have met² an honourable death are indeed the happiest.

¹ *to be reckoned, thought* = *duci* or *haberi*.

² *obire*.

Exercise 128.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. In using *oportet* there is the same difficulty as in using *debeo*. In English we say, "*I ought to have come*," expressing the Perfect tense in the Infinitive. In Latin the tense must be expressed in the modal verb, not in the following Infinitive; e.g. *Debui venire* or *oportuit me venire*. There is the same difference in the use of *possum*; e.g. *Potui hoc facere* = *I might have done this*.
2. Remember that *se* refers to the subject of the sentence. An impersonal verb has no subject, and therefore cannot be followed directly by *se*; e.g. *He was ashamed* = *eum puduit*. If, however, the impersonal is used in an indirect statement *se* must be used for the third person, because it refers to the subject of the verb of saying; e.g. *Dixit se pudere* = *He said he was ashamed*. See Rule 7, p. 40.

I repented of my crime.

Do you pity the prisoner?

They are weary of life.

He was ashamed of his deed.

It becomes us to do this.

You ought to speak.

You ought to have spoken.

It is lawful for us to use arms.

Do not repent of your deed.

You may go away.

You might have gone away.

We are resolved to banish the kings.

It happened that the king was killed.

It is the lot of all men to die.

You ought not to be ashamed of your friend.

You might have pleased the gods.

It is our duty to fight.

I happened to be present.

Exercise 129 [A].

1. I am sorry for your grief.
2. I am ashamed of my country.
3. It seemed good to the judge to put the prisoners to death.
4. He said he pitied me.
5. I believe you repent of your crime.
6. He replied that he was tired of living in the city.
7. Every man has not the good luck to go to Corinth.
8. You ought to know what you are doing.
9. You ought to have done this of your own accord.
10. It is becoming to children to obey their parents.
11. Do not be ashamed of such a deed.

Exercise 130 [B].

1. Do not get tired of living in the country.
2. He said we ought to leave our home.
3. A man who runs away in battle soon repents of his cowardice.
4. We happened to be present at that time.
5. I was sorry for his sufferings.
6. He said he was ashamed of his deed.
7. I do not think you ought to have done that.
8. Do not repent of your kindness to us.
9. It happened that the general was present with his staff.
10. You might have escaped before the battle.
11. Why do you repent of saving the state?

Exercise 131 [A].*GENITIVE CASE.*¹

1. Through fear of death the bravest men forget their courage.

2. He is ignorant of many things which he ought to be skilled in.

3. Looking after² other people's affairs is difficult.

4. I pitied them all as they came back from the battle.

5. Skill in addressing his soldiers was necessary for a Roman general.

6. The remembrance of his past life brings one man joy, another pain.

7. Your care for me reminds me of my father.

8. I am anxious to thank you for your kindness, which I shall never forget.

9. He is skilled in every labour which you demand of him.

10. I am sure he will be mindful of us in our absence.

11. Under the emperors Romans were made consuls for the sake of honour, not for the sake of administering public affairs.

12. My knowledge of Caesar made me eager for his friendship.

¹ An earlier exercise on the Genitive will be found on page 50.

² Use the noun *cura*.

Exercise 132 [B].

1. No one will repent of a life well spent.
2. You have a chief mindful of others, forgetful of self.
3. Pity a man suffering undeservedly.¹
4. He was charged with treachery.
5. His love for his country is more powerful than his fear of death.
6. The best men are fonder of doing than of speaking.
7. Out of pity for the woman he gave up his design.
8. He is unaccustomed to swimming.
9. They were unaccustomed to toil, but despised danger.
10. I hope you will not forget your country through your eagerness to see new things.
11. Caesar's friendship for me I value very highly.
12. These barbarians seem skilled in making bridges.

¹ *unworthy things.*

Exercise 133 [A].

[*Exercises 131-140 are for revision.*]

Now when they had sailed for several days, it chanced that they caught sight of a ship of war approaching them. Some were afraid, and wished to turn back, but the captain¹ said that he was ashamed to turn back, "For," said he, "brave men ought to meet an enemy boldly, and I do not believe that by flight we shall escape from so large a vessel." As the ship came near they saw that there were on board² many soldiers, one of whom, by his proud looks and splendid dress, seemed to be the king. This man called out to them to come on board his ship. And when they had done this he asked them where they came from, and why they had left their homes.

Exercise 134 [A].

On hearing their answer he asked them to sail with him, and promised to give them lands in his country, because they seemed to be good soldiers, and because he pitied them for their misfortunes. But they declared that they wished to discover what fortune the gods would give them in distant regions. Then the king replied that he was sorry for this resolve,³ but that he would no longer try to persuade them to follow him. He asked them if they needed gold or provisions; and when they said that they had no need of such things, he dismissed them kindly, and held on his course.

¹ dux. ² to be on board = in nave vehi. ³ consilium.

Exercise 135 [A].

I have lately with much care found out and written in a book the strange stories which the inhabitants¹ of this district believe. Among other things they believe that a man who throws a garment into the stream which flows near our town will be free from disease for a year. I have asked why they believe this, and they say that a god dwells in the stream; but why the god of a river wants such gifts they do not understand. They also believe that a certain spring which rises outside the town is able to make rich the man who visits it on a certain night in the summer; but on which of all the nights of summer one ought to visit the spring no man can tell, and I have never found a man made rich in this way.

Exercise 136 [A].

The gallant Brutus,² who had been blockaded for a long time, wished to know when the reinforcements would arrive. Accordingly he sent away two ships, under the command of his lieutenant, with the intention of informing the Roman commander³ in what great danger he was. But these ships being wrecked, the enemy surrounded them, and asked the lieutenant who they were and where they came from. On learning that they were Romans, they promised to spare their lives, and be their guides. But when they had led them two miles they surrounded and slew them. The Roman commander, on hearing of this through his scouts, decided not to delay any longer, but to send forward two legions as soon as possible.

¹ incolae.

² Lat. "Brutus a very gallant man."

³ *Commander-in-chief* = 'imperator'; in a general sense, *commander* = 'dux.' The 'legatus' is the second in command, properly the general to whom the command of a separate division was assigned.

Exercise 137 [B].

When the king of France was besieging Amsterdam¹ the citizens were greatly terrified, and summoned a council to consider what they ought to do. Most of them said that there was no hope of holding out any longer against the enemy, and advised that the keys of the city should be given up to the king. But they observed that one of the elders was asleep, and had not given his opinion. So they woke him up, and asked him what he advised about giving up the keys. He enquired if the king had demanded them; and when they said that he had not done so, he replied, "Then let us wait at least till² he be pleased to ask for them." It is said that³ these words saved the city.

¹ Amstelodamum.

² Use dum with Subj.

³ See Note 1, page 44.

Exercise 138 [B].

The soldier, thus recognized, was soon surrounded by a mob of citizens asking who he was, where he came from, where he was going, for what purpose he was in the town, and why he had not come through the gates, but had climbed over the wall in the night time. In no wise terrified, he replied that neither could he answer so many things at once, nor was it the business of private citizens to know what was his name or what he came for. On which he was dragged with much violence to the magistrates, who questioned him again as to his purposes.¹ As he would not speak, they were deliberating whether they ought to detain him or set him free; but there came up a soldier who pretended to recognize the prisoner, and asked whether he had not been seen in the rebels' camp.

¹ See head of Exercise 116.

Exercise 139 [B].

A boy and his sister were once found by the inhabitants of a village, near the entrance of a cavern. They were in form like other men, but they were different in the colour of their skin, which was tinged with a green colour. No one could understand what they said. When they were brought to the house of a certain knight they wept bitterly.¹ Food being set before them they refused to touch it, though it was clear that they were tormented by great hunger. At length, when some beans² were brought into the house, they asked by signs that these should be given them. They fed on these with great delight, and for a long time would eat no other food. The boy, however, was always languid³ and sad, and died in a short time.

¹ shed (fundo) many tears.

² fabae.

³ languidus.

Exercise 140 [B].

The girl, however, becoming accustomed¹ to various kinds of food² at length lost that green colour. For many years she remained with the knight to whom she and her brother had first been brought. Being frequently asked about her country, she declared that the inhabitants were of a green colour, and that they saw no sun, but enjoyed such a light as we see after sunset. Being asked how she came into this country, she replied that as they were following their flocks they came to a certain cavern, where they heard a delightful³ sound of bells.⁴ Led on by this they wandered for a long time through the cavern, and at last reached its mouth. When they came out of it they said they were stupefied by the excessive heat of the sun, and were thus caught by the inhabitants of the village.

¹ *assuefactus ad.*

³ *jucundus.*

² *omne genus cibi.*

⁴ *tintinnabulum.*

RELATIVE WITH THE SUBJUNCTIVE

Rule 18. A relative with the subjunctive may express many adverbial meanings, especially a Purpose or a Consequence.

This is the regular way of expressing a *Purpose*—

- (1) When the subject of the subordinate sentence is the same as the subject or object of the Principal Verb.
- (2) When the subordinate clause contains a comparative, in which case **quo** (the abl. of the relative) is regularly used for *ut*.¹

A *Consequence* is most often expressed in this way with the phrases *is qui*, *dignus qui*, and *sunt qui*.

EXAMPLES.

Final.

Duas legiones reliquit **quae** auxilio duci **possent**.

He left two legions to be brought up as reinforcements.

Nervii murum aedificaverunt **quo** **facilius** equitatum **impedirent**.

The Nervii built a wall the more easily to hinder the cavalry.

Consecutive.

Non **is** sum **qui** mortis periculo **terrear**.

I am not the man to be frightened by the fear of death.

Dignus erat **qui** rex **fieret**.

He deserved to be made king.

Sunt qui non **habeant**.

There are some who have not (or some men have not).

¹ We thus have four ways of expressing purpose in Latin, viz. as in the following sentences:

(1) Legatos miserunt *ut* pacem peterent (Rule 2).

(2) Legatos miserunt *qui* pacem peterent.

(3) Legatos miserunt *ad* pacem petendam.

Legatos miserunt *pacis* petendae causa (Rule 13).

(4) Legatos miserunt *pacem* petitum (Rule 14).

Occasionally also purpose is expressed by the Future Participle; e.g.

Legatos miserunt *pacem* petituros.

Exercise 141 [A].

1. Caesar has sent out scouts to discover where his reinforcements are.
2. These men are here to give an answer.
3. Hannibal left part of his army to blockade Tarentum.
4. They carried food with them, so that they might march the quicker.
5. I have few men to send.
6. Send cavalry, so that we may the more easily check the enemy.
7. To become wiser, read many books.
8. He promises to send books for me to read.

Exercise 142 [B].

1. In order that the flight might be shorter he drew up his line near the camp.
2. I have no one to trust.
3. On the next day men were sent to kill Cicero.
4. There are guards in the streets to restrain the multitude.
5. He went into the country to live more quietly.
6. To make your son better you ought to live better yourself.
7. Caesar set chosen men in the woods to fall on the enemy when fighting.
8. He left Labienus to command the camp.

Exercise 143 [A].

1. He is not a man to rejoice even at his enemy's death.
2. He deserves to be put to death.
3. The consul is doing things that do not benefit the state.
4. Shall I find a soldier brave enough to go with me?
5. There were some who were willing to give Caesar large sums of money.
6. There is no one who could endure such insolence.
7. Does he deserve to receive so great a reward?
8. Is he a man to be trusted with money?

Exercise 144 [B].

1. I am not the man to refuse money to my own brother.
2. Send such troops as can help me.
3. There are men who accuse him of theft.
4. We did not deserve to be put in prison.
5. Men are not easily found who can endure pain patiently.
6. Is he a man to be admitted into my house?
7. There were some who could run faster.
8. The ships are not fit to be launched.

Exercise 145 [A].

1. No one was found to face death for him.
2. I am not the man to shirk danger.
3. They sent five priests to consult the god at Delphi.
4. I will say such things as may persuade him.
5. Five men have to-night entered the camp to announce that the city will be surrendered.
6. Caesar left his baggage at Ravenna in order to reach Rome more quickly.
7. He is worthy of being made a Roman.
8. There are some men who do not desire riches.
9. He led out the tenth legion to attack the enemy in the rear.
10. He drew up his line in this way in order that his forces might appear greater.

Exercise 146 [B].

1. Men were sent by the general to choose a suitable place for a camp.
2. The more easily to cross the river he gave orders for making a bridge.
3. He was not the man to bring his soldiers rashly into danger.
4. Towards evening fresh men arrived to take the place of those who were disabled by wounds.
5. There are some who think that we ought to strike the camp and advance to higher ground.
6. Men who free their country from slavery deserve to be praised by all.

7. A mound was made, and ladders brought up that we might the more easily scale the walls.

8. I am not the sort of man, he said, to wish to avoid danger.

9. Spies were sent to see if the enemy's troops were advancing.

10. There were some who advised the general not to summon a council.

11. These barbarians are not men whom we ought to despise.

12. He placed elephants in front of his line of battle to strike more terror into the enemy.

Exercise 147 [A].

Hannibal first crossed the Pyrenees¹ with an army of fifty thousand foot soldiers and nine thousand horse, without any difficulty. No Roman army appeared to hinder his march. He reached the Rhone safely, and found no Romans to oppose him. The Gauls, however, were prepared to bar his way, and Scipio, the Roman general, had arrived at Massilia; so Hannibal determined to cross the river without delay. He ordered such boats as were ready to be brought to him, and trees to be cut down from which to build others. In two days the boats were ready, but the Gauls were drawn up on the opposite bank to prevent the landing. Accordingly Hannibal sent a large number of his men some miles up the river, ordering them to cross and attack the Gauls in the rear upon a given signal.

¹ Pyrenaei.

Exercise 148 [B].

The Carthaginians had now reached the highest point of the mountains; they encamped on a large plateau¹ where they could rest for some days. But it was a cold and desolate place, and not one where they could remain long, especially as winter was approaching. Many had been left behind on the march, overcome with want and hardships; and the cold was terrible to men who came from Spain and Africa. But Hannibal encouraged them, and pointed out that from this place the road led downwards, and that it would soon lead them to a country where they would find friends. "There lies Italy," cried he; "yonder² is the way to³ Rome."

¹ planities, f. 5.

² ille.

³ Use *dūcère*.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE EXPRESSING OBLIGATION

(Translation of "ought," "must.")

Rule 19.—The Nominative of both Gerundive and Gerund is used to express obligation. The Gerundive is used with Transitive Verbs, the Gerund with Intransitive Verbs.

e.g. Gerundive—leges mutandae sunt = *the laws must be changed.*

Gerund—succurrendum est amicis = *we must help our friends.*

When these statements become *indirect* the Acc. is used in the same sense of obligation.

e.g. Gerundive—dixit leges mutandas esse.

Gerund—dixit succurrendum esse amicis.

Rule 20.—In this construction the person on whom the obligation lies is expressed by the Dative. This is often called **Dative of the Agent**. But for the sake of clearness, where there is another Dative, the Agent is expressed by ab with the Abl.

e.g. Leges nobis mutandae sunt = *we must change the laws.*

Legibus a nobis parendum est = *we must obey the laws.*

N.B.—(1) The English words "ought," "must," etc., are often to be translated into Latin by this construction. Remember that the Gerundive is a *Passive Adjective*, and before translating we must turn the English in thought into a *Passive form*.

e.g. We must change the laws =

The laws are to-be-changed by us =

Leges nobis mutandae sunt.

(2) Observe also that the Gerundive can be used with any tense of *sum* according to the sense, and the English translations will be very various, because our words "must" and "ought" have only one tense.

e.g. Leges nobis mutandae **erunt** =

We *shall have to* change the laws.

(literally, the laws will be to-be-changed by us.)

Leges nobis mutandae **erant** =

We *ought to have changed* the laws.

The Gerund in like manner can be used with any tense.

e.g. Legibus a nobis parendum **fuit** =

We *had to* obey the laws.

Exercise 149 [A].

1. We must set out at once, and you must guard the camp.
2. Caesar had to do everything at the same time.
3. It is agreed by all that the laws must be obeyed.
4. All good citizens must obey the laws.
5. Crassus was ordered to see to the repairing of the fleet.
6. We have undertaken the construction of a bridge over¹ the Rhine.
7. This should not have been done.
8. We must not injure those who are desirous of helping us.
9. Caesar caused a camp to be fortified.
10. They must not be accused of treachery by us.

¹ 'in' with *Abl.*

Exercise 150 [A].

1. We must not remain here any longer.
2. Let them see to building another bridge.
3. I think we must choose a place for a camp.
4. They will have to return in fifteen days.
5. We must start at once and march until evening.
6. Caesar pointed out that hostages must be surrendered
by all the states.
7. We must take measures for the good of the state.
8. Do you think Crassus ought to have done this?
9. He promised to undertake the repairing of the fleet.
10. We have to wait here for reinforcements.

Exercise 151 [B].

1. We must help the poor.
2. The general decided that he must not delay any
longer.
3. We shall have to send forward two legions.
4. Caesar entrusted to Labienus the repairing of the ships.
5. They had to remain a long time where they were.
6. They had to leave their winter quarters in spring.
7. He should not have said that.
8. They promised to see to holding a levy.
9. They did not know where they were to pitch the camp.
10. We must come to the help of our allies.

Exercise 152 [B].

1. We have to cross the sea.
2. We must not delay too long.
3. The soldiers were told to see to fortifying the camp.
4. Crassus ought not to have gone to Asia.
5. All of us must obey the laws.

6. We shall have to leave our country.
7. We were entrusted with holding a levy.
8. They ought to have helped their allies.
9. Hannibal caused his camp to be pitched on the top of a mountain.
10. We should not accuse them of treachery.

Exercise 153 [A].

While the Romans were waging war against the Samnites¹ their general Postumius tried to lead an army into Samnium through a narrow pass. There is in the midst of this pass a broad and open plain, but in order to reach it an army must enter a narrow defile, and afterwards either it must go back by the same way or must get out by a still narrower defile into Samnium. The Romans reached the open plain, but attempting to proceed they could not escape, for meanwhile the Samnites had blocked both the defiles. To escape they had to climb the mountains, and having tried to do this many times in vain they had to fortify a camp where they were.

Exercise 154 [B].

Accordingly Postumius sent ambassadors to ask for fair terms. Pontius the Samnite replied that they must give hostages and surrender their arms, and must themselves be sent under the yoke. At length these disgraceful conditions were accepted, and the Romans were allowed to depart. To reach home they had to pass through the country of their campanion allies, and even ask them for food and clothes. The Roman Senate refused to accept the treaty, and sent back the consul to surrender himself to the Samnites.

* Samnite = Samnis, Gen. Samnitis.

VERBS OF FEARING

Rule 21. Verbs of Fearing have three constructions—

(a) **Prolate Infinitive.** (b) **ne with Subjunctive.** (c) **ne non with Subjunctive.**

EXAMPLES.

(a) **Timeo redire.**

I am afraid to return.

(b) **Timeo ne redeat.**

I am afraid that he will¹ return (of his returning).

(c) **Timebam ne non rediret.²**

I was afraid he would not return.

Timeo ne non redierit.

I am afraid he has not returned.

Timebam ne non rediisset.

I was afraid he had not returned.

N.B. (b) and (c) are *Final Sentences*, Latin preferring to express the *object* or *desire* of the person fearing, while Eng. gives the exact opposite; viz., the thing you wish to *avoid*. Of course (a) is only possible when the subject of the two verbs is the same.

¹ In clauses after verbs of fearing there is no need to express the English Future (as in Indirect questions) by the Periphrastic Conjugation (Rule 16). The Present (in Primary sequence) and Imperfect (in Historic sequence) are used for it without causing any ambiguity.

² *Ut* may sometimes take the place of *ne non* (especially after *vereor*).

Exercise 155.

1. I am afraid to do this.
2. I am afraid he will do this.
3. I was afraid you would not do this.
4. I am afraid he is dead.
5. I was afraid he had not seen me.
6. Do not fear to return.
7. Are you afraid of speaking?
8. We were afraid of being seen.
9. I am afraid lest they should see us.
10. I am afraid they will not see us.
11. They were afraid not to tell the truth.
12. I fear that he has lied.

Exercise 156 [A].

1. As they were afraid to follow me, I went away alone.
2. The soldiers were afraid that the enemy would surround them.
3. As the camp was not yet fortified, they were afraid of being attacked by the barbarians.
4. Though¹ he was not afraid to die, he wished to live as long as possible.
5. Fearing that the ships would not be able to keep on their course they returned to the harbour.
6. He was afraid that his plans had been discovered by the enemy.
7. Fearing to advance farther, they took up their position ten miles from the town.

¹ 'quum' with *Imp. Subj.*

8. Though the city had walls one hundred feet high, the inhabitants feared they could not resist an assault.

9. They were afraid that they would not be able to conceal their departure from their enemies.

10. He was afraid of being betrayed by his own men, and therefore resolved to kill himself.

11. They loved their country so much that for its sake they were not afraid of dying.

12. I am afraid the prisoners have escaped.

Exercise 157 [B].

1. You ought not to be afraid to tell the truth.

2. I am afraid that you have not told the truth.

3. Our men were afraid of being surrounded by the enemy.

4. Most men are afraid of dying.

5. I am afraid they will not be able to follow the standards.

6. The general was afraid to give the signal for advance.

7. Were you not afraid that the soldiers would seize and kill your son?

8. Fearing that they would be taken prisoners they fled for refuge into the woods.

9. The general told his men not to be afraid of crossing the river.

10. We were afraid that the city had been taken.

11. I was afraid that we should not reach the camp before sunset.

12. They set out at daybreak, fearing that the enemy might overtake them.

Exercise 158 [A].

News having been brought of Caesar's approach, the Arverni, fearing that he would invade their territory, resolved to break down all the bridges over the river. Caesar was very anxious to cross as soon as possible, for he was afraid of being hindered all the summer by this river. He accomplished this by the following trick. He sent forward the greater part of his forces, and the enemy followed these, thinking that the whole army had set out. Thereupon Caesar, who had remained with a few men, ordered them to repair one of the bridges with all speed, fearing that they might not be able to finish the work before the return of the enemy.

Exercise 159 [B].

A peasant on the point of death¹ summoned his sons, and told them that the end of his life was near. "My sons," he said, "I am not afraid that you will disobey my commands, or forget me when I am dead.² I therefore bid you work diligently in my vineyard, for by doing this you will discover great riches." When the old man died, his sons remembered his words, and began to dig up the soil with all their might, hoping to find great riches concealed there. Soon however they were afraid that they had been deceived, for they could find neither gold nor silver; and at first they regretted their labour. But at last they discovered what their father had intended, for by carefully digging up the ground, they made it so fertile that it produced excellent vines.

Future Participle.

² *when I am dead*—use Past Participle.

CAUSAL CLAUSES

A Causal Clause is one which gives a reason for the statement of the principal cause.

Rule 22.—Causal Clauses have their verb

(a) in the **Indicative** when the **actual cause** of a fact is given,
 (b) in the **Subjunctive** when only a **suggested reason** is given.

But *quum* (since) always takes Subj.

N.B.—Of course the Indicative of a Causal clause becomes Subjunctive if it forms part of an Indirect Statement. See Rule 17.

EXAMPLES.

(a) *Tacent quia periculum metuunt.*

They are silent because they fear danger.

(b) *Socrates accusatus est quod juventutem corrumperet.*

Socrates was accused on the ground that he corrupted the youth.

(It is not asserted by the writer that Socrates did corrupt the youth.)

Exercise 160 [A].

1. As you have heard this, you ought to announce it to all.
2. Under these circumstances I shall leave the city.
3. This being the case, no one would remain.
4. I am rejoiced that you have decided to come.
5. They declared that they had done this, because it seemed to be for the good of the state.
6. We were told that they had been condemned to death, because they had displeased the king.
7. He must be considered a coward, since he is unwilling to become a soldier.

8. Since night is at hand, let all depart to their tents.
9. In this condition of affairs it was to our interest to withdraw from the meeting.
10. I rejoice that you and the army are safe.
11. They pretended to be glad that we were safe.
12. I pity you greatly, because no one seems to love you.

Exercise 161 [B].

1. The slave was blamed for coming too late.
2. You deserve praise, because you have served your country well.
3. Under these circumstances the general decided to sound the retreat.
4. They were condemned to death for setting fire to the city.
5. I am rejoiced that such men have been condemned to death.
6. He said they ought to be punished, because they had fled from the battle.
7. They were charged with treason, on the ground that they had threatened the king with death.
8. This being the case, we must advance at once.
9. As they have shown themselves brave soldiers, let them receive the promised reward.
10. Our friends declared that they rejoiced that we had returned in safety.
11. Since this is so, you must remain in exile.
12. They were brought to trial on the charge of conspiring against the state.

Exercise 162 [A].

The triumph of Camillus, after the fall of Veii, was disliked by the Romans, because he showed too much pride. Amongst other things he was accused of making himself equal to the gods, because he had entered the city in a chariot drawn by four white horses, which were sacred to Jupiter and the Sun. He also made the soldiers still more angry, because he ordered them to return part of the spoils taken at Veii, that he might offer them to the god Apollo. Finally he was accused of having hidden some treasures which he ought to have given up to the people, and was obliged to go into exile.

Exercise 163 [B].

Some Irishmen¹ had been brought to trial on the charge of stirring up a revolution² in their country. They asserted that they had done nothing contrary to the law of nations, since the English were oppressing their land, and they themselves were only trying to free her from an unjust dominion.³ Under these circumstances they declared that they by no means repented of their deed, especially because they had shown that it was not easy to govern Irishmen against their will. These words displeased many who were present; but since the prisoners were young, and had never before been accused of any crime, they were spared.

¹ Hiberni.

² *seditionem facere* or *novis rebus studere*.

³ *dominatus*.

Exercise 164 [A].

(Exercises 164-167 are for Revision.)

Now when the Delphians¹ knew what great danger they were in, great fear fell upon them. In their terror they consulted the oracle concerning the holy treasures, and enquired if they should bury them in the ground, or carry them away to another country. The god replied that they must leave the treasures untouched. "He was able," he said, "without help to protect his own." So the Delphians, when they received this answer, began to deliberate how to save themselves. First of all they sent their women and children across the gulf into Achaia. After which the greater number of them climbed to the top of Parnassus, and placed their goods in a cave. In this way all the Delphians quitted the city, except sixty men and the prophet.

Exercise 165 [A].

A great plague had broken out² in the city, and many of the people,³ both rich and poor, had perished. A great number of those who survived, who had neither wives nor children, resolved to leave the city and sail away to discover new lands. They pitied those whom they were leaving behind, but they knew that they could not help them. Accordingly they set

¹ Delphi.

² = arisen.

³ *People* (= *persons*) should be omitted (as here) or sometimes be translated by *ii*. In the political sense (= *a nation*) it is *populus*. In the sense *race* or *tribe* use *gens*, *natio*.

sail by night, and meeting with a favourable wind, were many miles away from the city before dawn. They did not know to what lands they would come, but they had resolved to sail towards the west.

Exercise 166 [B].

The two armies had been gazing at each other a long time.¹ At last an old man came forward, and asked that a warrior from each army should be chosen to fight for his countrymen. Accordingly Sohrab² came forward from the one army and Rustum,² his father, from the other; but neither³ of them knew who the other⁴ was. For it happened that when Sohrab was born and carried off by the Scythians,⁵ his father was absent. At first Sohrab prevailed; for Rustum hurled his spear with such violence that he slipped and fell on the ground. But quickly rising, he dealt⁶ his son a deadly wound; for Sohrab had heard Rustum, as he rushed forward, shout out his name, and knowing⁷ him to be his father, he did not even move a hand to defend himself.

¹ jamdudum (imperf. indic.).

² It is best not to try to turn these names into a Latin shape. In turning a piece into Latin it is often possible to omit the proper names. Where it is not, try to recall some parallel incident in Roman history, and adopt the names from that. Where (as here) this is difficult, it is better to adopt *any* classical names than to talk of 'Sohrabus' and 'Rustumius.'

³ neuter. ⁴ alter. ⁵ Scythae. ⁶ infligere. ⁷ Quum with Imp. Subj.

Exercise 167 [B].

King James's¹ army was far² superior to Monmouth's in numbers, but with such great carelessness did they take up their position on that night that they were almost surprised and destroyed by the rebels. By chance the guides whom Monmouth trusted had not told him that there was a ditch twenty-five feet wide which defended the king's camp in front. Therefore when the rebels were just going to rush forward to attack the ramparts, they were stopped³ by this trench. The officers ordered their men to throw the waggons into it, but the guards of the other army were now aroused, and their artillery⁴ began to play upon⁵ the rebels. It is said that Monmouth, having exhorted his men to fight bravely and hold their ground, himself rode out⁶ of the fight, hoping to find⁷ some place where he might be safe.

¹ James has a Latinised form *Jacobus*. But here call him Octavianus and call Monmouth L. Antonius, who caused an insurrection against Octavianus soon after the battle of Philippi.

² longe, multo.

³ impedire.

⁴ *Artillery* = tormenta or ballistae. ⁵ saxa ingerere in. ⁶ avehī.

⁷ *Hoping to*, si forte (with Subjunctive).

QUIN

Rule 23.—Quin with Subjunctive is used

- (1) (a) after Verbs of doubting and denying¹ } when these
 (b) „ „ hindering and pre- } verbs are pre-
 venting² } ceded by a
 negative.

In these uses quin = quī-ne, *by which not*, quī being an old Ablative of the Relative.

EXAMPLES.

- (a) Non { **dubitare** } debemus quin fuerint ante Homerum
 { **negare**¹ } poetæ.

*We ought not to { doubt } that there were poets before
 { deny } Homer.*

- (b) Nihil me deterrebit quin proficiscar.

Nothing will prevent my setting out.

Haud multum **abfuit quin** Ismenias interficeretur.

Ismenias was very near being killed. (There was not much to prevent Ismenias being killed.)

Under (1) (b) come the important phrases—

non possum facere quin . . . = I cannot help . . .

non potest fieri quin . . . = It is impossible that . . .
 not . . .

non potest
 haud multum abfuit quin (ego) . . . = I was very near . . .
 or I was not far from . . .

(2) In certain phrases where quin = qui-ne, *who not*, qui being Nominative.

e.g. **Nemo est quin . . . nulla navis est quin . . .** etc.

Nullum est aedificium **quin** collapsum sit.

There is no building that has not fallen.

N.B.—In all its uses quin is preceded by a negative, or virtual negative (e.g. vix, aegre, or a question expecting the answer “no,” like “Can anyone prevent . . .?”).

¹ The use of this construction with **negare** is not earlier than Livy.

² Prohibeo, veto, prefer Infinitive.

Exercise 168 [A].

1. There can be no doubt that he did this on purpose.
2. I could not deny that I was guilty.
3. There is no man who does not often do wrong.
4. Do not prevent their setting out.
5. I cannot help writing to you.
6. We had no doubt that he was on our side.
7. It is impossible that the guilty man should escape.
8. I was very near dying of hunger.
9. We must not doubt that he will keep his word.
10. There was no man in the city who had not a son or a brother in the army.

Exercise 169 [B].

1. They do not deny that they desire peace on fair terms.
2. There was no man of noble birth who did not scorn Catiline.¹
3. They were not far from taking the city by force of arms.
4. I have no doubt that he is already consul.
5. Do not hinder his leaving Rome.
6. He said he had no doubt the news was true.
7. It is impossible for us not to believe him.
8. We cannot doubt that this pleases the multitude.
9. There is no ship that has not been hurt by the storm.
10. I could not help consulting you.

¹ Catilina.

QUOMINUS

Rule 24.—**Quominus with Subjunctive** is used after verbs of **hindering and preventing**, whether they are positive or negative.¹

Exception.—Prohibeo, veto, prefer an Infinitive.

EXAMPLES.

Nihil deterret sapientem quominus reipublicae consulat.

Nothing prevents a philosopher from serving the state.

Per Africanum stetit quominus dimicaretur.

It was due to Africanus that there was no battle.

Exercise 170 [A].

1. It was owing to you that the army was not destroyed.
2. Who hindered you from coming to our help?
3. They were prevented by the snow from crossing the Alps.
4. You ought to have prevented the fleet from weighing anchor.
5. We could not deter the soldiers from charging the enemy.
6. It was due to us that the house was not burnt.
7. We ought to prevent them from attacking us.
8. The soldiers could not be prevented from rushing into the river.
9. I believe it was through me that we were not defeated.
10. I could hardly restrain them from burning the ships.
11. They refused to leave the city.

¹ Quominus=quo minus, and is really a special case of the Relative with the Subj. making a Final sentence.

Exercise 171 [B].

1. It was owing to Horatius that Rome was not taken.
2. The soldiers must be prevented from plundering the town.
3. The general could hardly prevent his men from burning the houses.
4. Let not fear deter you from speaking the truth.
5. You ought to forbid the fleet to set sail.
6. Was it not due to our king that we did not perish?
7. The tribunes were able to prevent laws from being passed.
8. The ambassadors were the cause of peace not being made.
9. By surrendering the city to the enemy, we prevented the inhabitants from dying of hunger.
10. You prevented them by your threats from speaking the truth.
11. Did you not refuse to supply the army with provisions?

Exercise 172 [A].*QUOMINUS AND QUIN.*

1. Every one knows that this ought to be done.
2. We must prevent the enemy from crossing the river.
3. There is no doubt that they ought to have remained.
4. They hesitated to speak, but I had no doubt that they were angry.
5. The city was within a very little of being destroyed.
6. There is no one present who does not know that you are lying.
7. It was due to Themistocles that the Athenians did not leave Salamis.
8. All the world knows that I fought for my country.
9. Do not try to prevent these men from escaping.
10. There is no doubt that they have betrayed us.
11. I cannot help hoping that we shall be saved.

Exercise 173 [B].

1. It is impossible that you have not heard this.
2. There is no doubt that there lived brave men before Agamemnon.¹
3. Who is there so base as not to love his country?
4. It is owing to the gods that we did not die of starvation.
5. Do not refuse to help those who have benefited the state.
6. I had no doubt that they wished to deceive me.
7. Our men could hardly be restrained from making the assault at once.
8. I easily prevented the slaves from reporting this to Caius.
9. There is no doubt that this news will cause great panic to the citizens.
10. It is impossible for us to save the state.

Exercise 174 [A].

All the world has heard how gallantly Horatius Cocles defended the bridge by which the enemies of Rome hoped to enter the city. First with two companions and afterwards alone he resisted all the attacks made upon him, and prevented the enemy from crossing; and there is no doubt that he was the salvation of the Roman state. Again and again the enemy charged, but were always repulsed with great loss. At last, when the bridge was all but broken by the Romans, his countrymen called to him to come back, and, offering a prayer to the river god, he threw himself into the water. His friends feared that he would be drowned; but contrary to the expectations, both of friends and enemies, he reached the other bank in safety.

¹ Acc. Agamemnona.

Exercise 175 [B].

In this year the Gauls, under the leadership of Brennus, crossed the Alps, and threatened Rome with war. It is said that they were provoked by certain Roman ambassadors, who violated international law by taking part in a battle fought between the Gauls and Etruscans. As the Senate refused to punish the ambassadors, the Gauls vowed with the help of the gods to avenge this wrong, and set out for Rome. At the river Allia they won a great victory over the Romans, nor were they afterwards opposed. They were greatly amazed at¹ no one trying to prevent their entering Rome, and stopped some time outside the walls.

Exercise 176 [A].

[*Exercises 176-181 are for revision.*]

At the time when Russia² had as many enemies as neighbours, the king of Sweden laid siege to Novgorod, and the Swedes soon got possession of the city. There is no doubt that this happened through the carelessness of the inhabitants, and there are some who say it was the result of treachery. But there were some who determined to hold out to the last, and among these was a certain priest. He shut himself up in a house with a few friends, who, animated³ by his courage, refused to surrender, and fired⁴ on the enemy. Messengers were sent again and again to command them to surrender, and at last the enemy set fire to the house. But these brave men chose to be burnt in the house rather than to yield, for they had determined not to survive the independence of their country.

¹ quod.

² Russians = Scythae. Swedes = Suevi. Novgorod = Forum Novum.

³ confirmatus.

⁴ tela immittere. Of course the idea of *fire-arms* can never be reproduced in Latin. *Cannon* must be *tormenta*, *rifles*, *guns*, *shot*, etc., must be turned by some phrase with *tela* or *pila*.

Exercise 177 [A].

Antiochus greeted the Roman ambassadors on their arrival, and was stretching out his hand to Popilius; but the latter¹ gave him the despatches, and bade him read these first. After reading them through the king said he would consult his friends as to what ought to be done. But Popilius drew a circle round the king with a rod which he was carrying in his hand, and said, "Before you leave this circle² give me an answer to take to the Roman Senate." The king at first was on the point of refusing to obey the ambassador; but he knew that it would be to his advantage to keep the friendship of the Roman people, and at last replied that he would do what the Senate wished. Then at last Popilius stretched out his hand to the king as³ to a friend and ally.

Exercise 178 [A].

When ambassadors came to Hannibal in Italy to recall him to Carthage, he received them with great anger, and could hardly refrain from shedding tears. "There is no doubt," he cried, "that it is not the Romans who have conquered me, but my own people through their hatred and jealousy. Take me where you will; it matters little to me where I go, since I have to leave Italy." The ambassadors were now afraid that he would refuse to serve the state any longer, and tried to persuade him that the most important thing was to defend Carthage. But he replied that a city which feared to trust its generals did not deserve to be defended by them.

¹ qui tamen.² priusquam hoc circulo excedas.³ velut.

Exercise 179 [B].

Elated by the rapid departure of the Roman fleet from Africa, the Carthaginians still more rejoiced on hearing of its destruction. They could now boast that they were "friends of the sea, and enemies of all who sailed on it." This being the case the Romans could not prevent them from transferring the war to Sicily, with all the land forces, with 140 elephants, and with a fleet to help the army. They made straight for that island, and, taking the field,¹ prepared to ravage the open country.² But the Romans, with unconquerable resolution, undertook³ the construction of a new fleet, and within three months 220 new vessels had been built, and were ready for action.

¹ copias educere.

² campestris loci.

³ suscipere, followed by Gerundive.

Exercise 180 [B].

The command was entrusted to Xanthippus, who seemed to all to be the man whom they could best trust. A cry was raised for instant battle,¹ for none doubted that they would conquer under the command of Xanthippus. Being thus appointed general, he led his army into the plain, and prepared to give battle to the Romans. He first ordered the elephants to charge the Roman centre, and the cavalry to fall upon the wings on both sides. The Roman horse, who were greatly inferior in numbers, fled without striking a blow,² and the elephants, rushing³ into the foremost ranks of the Roman infantry, laid the enemy low⁴ in every direction. Attacked in front by the infantry, on the flanks by the cavalry, and on the rear by the elephants, the majority of the Roman soldiers of the line stood their ground bravely, and died where they were standing.

¹ that a battle should be fought at once.

² re integra.

³ invecti.

⁴ prosternere hostem.

Exercise 181 [B].

Ten years after, Caius, the younger brother of Tiberius, thinking he ought to avenge his brother's death, brought forward laws to upset the whole constitution.¹ The people had not forgotten the death of Tiberius, and all the power of the senators could not prevent their electing Caius tribune of the plebs. But Tiberius had proposed his laws because he pitied the common people; Caius proposed his in order that he might the more easily satisfy his desire for revenge.² He was accused also of aiming at kingship. For two years he delivered many speeches before the people, and continued to propose³ all such laws as might lessen the senate's power, but the most iniquitous of them was that which caused⁴ bread to be given to the common people at a very low rate.⁵

¹ evertere rempublicam.

² ulciscendi libido.

³ Imperfect.

⁴ efficere ut.

⁵ vili (Abl. of Price).

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

Rule 25. Conjunctions used in a purely temporal sense are followed by the indicative. But the verb is put in the Subjunctive (a) when it is in Oratio Obliqua, (b) when some other idea than that of time (e.g. purpose) is introduced.

N.B.—*Quum* is an exception. Also *dum* in the sense of *while*. For these see *Rules 26, 27.*

EXAMPLES.

- (a) **Postquam**¹ omnes Belgarum copias ad se venire vidit, ad exercitum properavit.

After he saw that all the forces of the Belgians were coming to him he hastened to join the army.

- (b) Caesar priusquam se hostes ex terrore recipere in fines Sussionum exercitum duxit.

Before the enemy could recover² from their panic, Caesar led his army into the territories of the Sussions.

When the temporal clause refers to Future time the verb will be in the Future (or Fut. Perf.) in Latin, though in English the Present is preferred.

- (c) Nos ante abibimus quam tu redieris (Fut. Perf.).

We shall go away before you return.

¹ The English Pluperfect should be rendered by Latin Perfect after *postquam*, and *simulac*. But with *postquam* the Plup. may be used if the exact interval of time is mentioned. Tertio post anno quam veneram = three years after I had come.

² Implying that Caesar wished to prevent their recovering.

Exercise 182 [A].

1. As soon as they saw us they went away.
2. I knew they would go away as soon as they saw us.
3. After you have heard what has taken place, you will know what you ought to do.
4. He refused to leave before he had seen the general.
5. From the time when we heard of the destruction of the army we gave up all hope of safety.
6. No sooner was the signal given than all the soldiers ran forward together.
7. As often as messengers arrive we all run to the gates.
8. They would not depart until they received their pay.
9. Caesar had embarked all his troops before Pompey could reach Brundisium.
10. Before Pompey reached Brundisium Caesar had embarked all his troops.

Exercise 183 [A].

1. We were defeated almost before battle was joined.
2. The Gauls attacked the camp before our men could man the walls.
3. After landing the soldiers burnt their fleet.
4. We were informed that the general had dismissed his men after giving them their pay.
5. A crowd assembled before I could reach the temple.
6. No sooner had the king appeared, than all the citizens raised a shout.
7. When you return you will hear what has taken place.
8. Advance the standards, my men, before the enemy catch sight of us.
9. They waited in the road until the king had passed.
10. We must remain here until our friends arrive.

Exercise 184 [B].

1. I will come to you when I have finished this work.
2. As soon as I had finished the work I left the city.
3. The camp was attacked by the enemy before we could take up arms.
4. Caesar addressed his men before leaving winter quarters.
5. It was announced that the cavalry had been sent forward before the scouts had returned.
6. Wait at Rome until you receive another letter.
7. They decided not to leave Rome till they had received our letters.
8. No sooner was war proclaimed, than the general took the field.
9. The prisoners escaped into the woods before the soldiers could overtake them.
10. Our men advanced in close order until they saw that the enemy were retreating.

Exercise 185 [B].

1. Horatius stood firm until the bridge was broken down.
2. I will leave the army as soon as the new consul arrives.
3. Cicero refused to go to a province after he resigned his consulship.
4. I will be here as soon as you call me.
5. He refused to leave the army till the new consul arrived.
6. After Pompey had fled from the field, his men scattered immediately.
7. You must not embark before I give you leave.
8. He shall not be accused till he himself is in Rome.
9. The consul said P. Scipio should not be accused before he had returned to Rome.
10. Milo was in the senate till it adjourned.

Exercise 186 [A].

As soon as Demosthenes arrived with his armament before Syracuse, and joined¹ the army of Nicias, the siege was carried on with renewed vigour.² At first Nicias' want of energy³ prevented even Demosthenes from making a direct⁴ assault. But at length Nicias was persuaded to allow his men to assault the city in the night time. This attack had an unfortunate result. The Athenians, before they reached the walls of the Achradina, fell into confusion, and were not far from fighting with one another in the darkness. Demosthenes was obliged to sound a retreat. After this Nicias' counsel again prevailed, and they determined to reduce the city by famine.

Exercise 187 [B].

As soon as news reached him of William's⁵ landing, Harold hastened southward by forced marches. Flashed⁶ by their recent success, his men did not despair of victory, and spent the night before the battle in feasting and drinking. The battle was stubbornly contested⁷ all day, and evening was approaching before it was clear which side⁸ would win the day. At length, by feigning retreat, William enticed the enemy from their position, and the Norman cavalry made⁹ great havoc in the ranks of the Saxon foot. But not until they saw their king fall, pierced through the eye by an arrow, did the Saxons take to flight. After his death they were routed, and fled in all directions.

¹ *Intr. se conjungere eum.*

² the city was besieged more keenly.

³ *want of energy = inertia.*

⁴ *directus.*

⁵ The Latin forms are *Gulielmus, Haraldus, Normanni, Saxones.*

⁶ *elati.*

⁷ *incipiti proelio dimicatur.*

⁸ *utri.*

⁹ *edere.*

QUUM

Rule 26. Quum (= when) in Primary tenses takes Indicative.
in Historic „ „ Subjunctive.
(= since) } always Subjunctive.
(= although)

EXAMPLES.

(a) Quum **potero** reddam.

I will pay it back when I can.

(b) Quae quum **cognoscerent**, se recipere in animo habebant.

when

since

although

they learnt this, they intended to retreat.

Exceptions.—Quum (= when) may take Historic tenses of the Indicative in certain cases—

(1) *When the clauses are inverted, i.e. when the quum clause really contains the principal statement.*

e.g. Jam ver appetebat quum Hannibal ex hibernis **movit**.

Spring was already approaching when Hannibal moved from his winter quarters.

N.B.—If not inverted, this would be “Hannibal moved from his quarters when spring was approaching” (quum ver appeteret).

(2) *When quum is frequentative, i.e. is equal to quoties, as often as, whenever.* [In this sense use Perfect and Pluperfect.]

e.g. Quum consul abfuerat, seditiosi erant.

They were mutinous whenever the consul was absent.

(3) *When quum is equal to quamdiu, as long as, or ex quo tempore, since.*

e.g. Quum consul aberat tum seditiosi erant.

They were mutinous as long as the consul was away.

Exercise 188 [A].

1. When spring returns we shall leave winter quarters.
2. Though they knew they would be killed, they advanced.
3. They were already approaching the city when news was brought that reinforcements had arrived.
4. Not knowing what was to be done, they decided to wait for the messengers.
5. I always lived in the country whenever I was able.
6. Knowing, as they did, that there was no hope of safety, they resolved to die bravely.
7. When you return, you will find the city changed.
8. We had scarcely begun our march, when we were ordered to halt.
9. Having approached the city, we halted.
10. Believing that they could hold out, they refused to surrender.

Exercise 189 [B].

1. We will come to meet you when you arrive.
2. Hoping to save the lives of his men the general gave the signal for retreat.
3. We were at Veii all the time that you were at Rome.
4. They refused to surrender, although they knew they would be conquered.
5. The citizens were almost dead of starvation, when relief arrived.
6. Knowing that the enemy were at hand, we tried to find out when they would attack us.
7. A signal was given whenever a ship approached.
8. Believing, as you do, that there is no hope of safety, why do you remain any longer?
9. When they came to Athens, they found their friends.
10. Since you think that I have deceived you, why do you not employ another messenger?

DUM

Rule 27. Dum (= while¹) may take Present Indicative, even of Past Time and in Oratio Obliqua.

(= provided that, if only = dummodo) always Subjunctive.

(= until) follows ordinary rule of Temporal Conjunctions (Rule 25).

Dum arma conquiruntur circiter hominum millia sex ad Rhenum contenderunt.

While the arms were being searched for about 6000 made off for the Rhine.

Oderint dum metuant.

Let them hate provided that they fear.

Dum reliquae naves convenirent ad horam nonam exspectavit.

To allow the rest of the ships to assemble, he waited till the ninth hour.

Mansit dum iudices rejecti sunt.

He waited till the judges were rejected.

¹ But when 'while' can be turned by 'as long as,' dum may take any tense of the Indicative, like quamdiu, etc. See Rule 25. e.g. Haec feci dum licuit = *I did this while (as long as) I was allowed.*

The difference is that in this case the time of the action of the principal verb and the time of the action of the 'dum' verb are contemporaneous, i.e. begin and end together.

Exercise 190 [A].

1. While they were cutting down the wood the enemy came upon them.
2. If only he is accused, without doubt he will be cast into prison.
3. The enemy quietly surrounded us while we were sleeping.
4. Till Camillus be recalled we shall not prosper.¹
5. As long as the kings ruled in Rome no one enjoyed liberty.
6. None of the enemy were seen while they crossed the hill.
7. They refused to treat for peace until the deserters were given up.
8. We concealed ourselves until they had crossed the river.
9. While you stay I shall stay.
10. Minucius promised that while the dictator was away he would not join battle.

Exercise 191 [B].

1. While we were wasting time the Gauls caught us up.
2. He was kept in prison until the king should return victorious.
3. While the conspirators gathered round Caesar, Antonius was led aside by Trebonius.
4. Do not ask him while he is angry.
5. Provided he reaches Rome in time, he will stand for the consulship.
6. Milo said he had stayed in the senate till it was dismissed.
7. While these were holding their conference the Gauls were seen to be stealthily advancing.
8. Deserters kept coming in till Manlius' army was very small.
9. We shall conquer if only we can entice them to battle.
10. He refused to fight till reinforcements came.

¹ rem prospere gerere.

Exercise 192 [A].*QUUM AND DUM.*

1. It was decided not to leave winter quarters till spring was approaching.
2. They knew that they could defend the town, provided that provisions did not run short.
3. While provisions held out they resisted all attacks.
4. They were compelled to raise the siege until fresh forces arrived.
5. They were both harassed by the enemy, and were also afraid that their own men would desert.
6. Men generally¹ show themselves brave when danger threatens their country.
7. When I hear what has taken place I will write to you.
8. They were ordered to remain in the camp until the enemy gave them an opportunity of joining battle.
9. We must retreat, he said, especially as the enemy have received fresh forces.
10. No one left his post while the battle lasted.
11. If only the allies can hold out a little² longer, we shall be able to renew the fight.
12. The soldiers refused to leave their posts, although the signal for retreat had been given.

¹ vulgo, plerumque.

² paulo.

Exercise 193 [B].

1. While the consul was absent the danger was increasing.
2. Since the enemy were only two miles distant, we were not allowed to wander out of camp.
3. He took it ill when I asked him to repay the money I had given him.
4. When the priests had returned without accomplishing anything, the Romans sent the women to appease Coriolanus.
5. Although Pompeius took part only in the end of the war, he obtained more glory from it than Crassus.
6. The majority advised him to engage while the troops were still fresh.
7. When our messenger has returned we shall understand better what the enemy intend to do.
8. When men are assembled in great numbers they fall easily into riot.
9. Although I am anxious for peace, I am annoyed at this fresh insult.
10. If only they give up their arms, we shall come to an agreement.
11. When the war is finished the tribune will bring Caesar to trial.¹
12. It was about noon when the Senate assembled.

¹ *Bring to trial* = reum aliquem facere, or nomen alicujus deferre.

Exercise 194 [A].

Both Demosthenes and the common soldiers were greatly disheartened at this defeat, though Nicias seemed almost to have expected it. He now proposed that the siege should be abandoned, since the gods refused¹ their assistance, and they repeatedly met with disaster. But while they were still disputing² the Syracusans took away from them their last means of flight. In several engagements in the harbour they destroyed the whole Athenian fleet. Now all were eager to retreat, while it was still possible, towards their allies in the western part of the island. But the superstition³ of Nicias deterred them from setting out till the new moon had risen; and meanwhile deserters had betrayed their plans to the Syracusans, who blocked the pass by which alone they could hope to reach the interior.

Exercise 195 [A].

At length, on the day appointed, they marched several miles until they came to the fatal pass. When they found this beset by the enemy, and all their attacks made no impression,⁴ they first tried to discover some other path by which they could ascend the mountains; then, almost in despair, they determined to make a dash⁵ for the coast, for this purpose dividing their forces into two divisions. Demosthenes was

¹ denegare.² de re disceptatur.³ nimia religio.⁴ effected nothing.⁵ per medios hostes perrumpere.

speedily overtaken and surrounded. Nicias met the enemy while crossing a river on the sixth day after he had left Syracuse. But, since his men had found no water to drink for many hours, they could not be restrained from rushing into the water, even when it was red with the blood of their comrades, All order being thus lost,¹ Nicias surrendered at discretion.² He and Demosthenes, being condemned to death, died by poison; the rest of the Athenians were kept in the stone quarries³ at Syracuse.

Exercise 196 [A].

After surmounting all these obstacles, and so signally defeating the Gauls, Hannibal was all but destroyed, not in open fight, but by ambuscade. He had almost reached the top of the Alps, when some old men came to him in the guise of envoys. The misfortunes of others, they said, had been a warning to them, and they preferred to make trial of the friendship rather than the might of the Carthaginians, and were ready to do whatever he wished. Hannibal, considering that he must not rashly either trust or slight⁴ them, accepted them as guides, but followed with his army in fighting order.⁵ The moment⁶ they entered a narrow pass, the enemy sprang out of their ambuscade on all sides, and assailed him both in front and in rear, both from a distance and at close quarters.

¹ confusis signis et ordinibus.

² nullis conditionibus latis.

³ lautuniae. ⁴ aspernari. ⁵ 'prepared for battle.' ⁶ 'as soon as.'

Exercise 197 [A].

When the Athenians had attempted without success to capture the island of Sphacteria, an assembly was called to discuss what steps should be taken. At this assembly Cleon, who was only a private citizen, and wholly inexperienced in war, declared that they would never be able to take the island while they employed such generals. "Under my command," he said, "I am sure that the enemy would not resist¹ us for twenty days." There is no doubt that he said this only to slight the other generals; but the Athenians at once assigned to him the control of the campaign, and he set out at once for the seat of war. Here, aided by fortune, he accomplished what he had undertaken, contrary to the expectations of all, and within twenty days returned to Athens in triumph.

Exercise 198 [B].

It was already dawning when the general gave the signal, promising a great reward to the first man who² climbed the

¹ Non fore ut hostes resistant. This periphrasis is used to express the Fut. Inf. of Verbs that have no Fut. Inf. The same periphrasis may be used for the Fut. Inf. Passive of any Verb; e.g. sperant fore ut urbs capiatur.

² In such phrases the Superlative must be transferred to the Relative clause—'the man who first . . .' So for 'he sent the most faithful slave he had,' the Latin idiom is, 'he sent the slave whom he had the most faithful.' Also 'the only man who' = 'the man who alone' (solus or unus).

walls. No one indeed resisted them as they entered the city, where the walls had been broken down, or climbed the walls by ladders. As soon as the shouting showed that the city had been taken the Asiatics all left their posts, and sought refuge in the citadel. The general allowed his men to plunder the town, partly because he was incensed with the inhabitants, and partly because the soldiers had hitherto always been restrained from plundering captured cities, and he wished them at last to have some reward for their valour. He was indeed accused of having done it to satisfy a grudge.

Exercise 199 [B].

A certain man dreamed that he saw an egg hanging from the top of his bed; and when he had been the next day to consult a friend what the meaning of this dream might be, the friend told him that he would find a great quantity of gold hidden under his bed. After he had been digging for several hours he found a large quantity of gold surrounded with silver. Therefore he sent his friend a small part of the silver. The man, being vexed that he had received so small a reward, sent a messenger to ask whether he could not give him part of the yolk¹ of the egg; for (he said) inasmuch as the gold was covered with silver, the god had intended to show him the gold by the yolk and the silver by the rest.² But for my part I am not persuaded that this story is true.

¹ vitellus.

² reliqua pars.

Exercise 200 [B].

This man, although he had been banished from his country on a false charge, did not cease, as often as opportunity was offered, to help her to the best of his ability. He was not the man to put his own prosperity before that of¹ the State; and he used to say that when his countrymen needed him they would recall him; till that time should arrive he was willing to remain in exile. Soon an occasion was offered him to show his devotion.

A conspiracy was formed by some desperate men, who killed the chief magistrates, and assumed supreme power. In this crisis the citizens remembered the exile, and sent messengers to ask him to come to their help. He forgot all the wrongs which he had suffered, and by his arrival brought safety to the State which had treated² him so unjustly.

Exercise 201 [B].

Rutilius was not fit to be made governor of a province. On his departure from Asia, while visiting Ephesus, a city whose inhabitants worship Diana, he had robbed the temple of that goddess. And he did many other such things as would offend all Romans of the old character. And as often as he committed a theft he had a jest to justify³ it by. He said he always took readily the little golden cups which the statues of

¹ Omit 'that of' in Latin.

² 'used.'

³ excusare.

gods held in their outstretched hands. And when his companions asked him whether he did not expect some day to be punished, he said the gods would not punish a man who, after praying to them for benefits, took the first gift which they offered him. When he was old he did just the same things as¹ he had done when a young man. When on the point of death he said, "One thing I have been repenting for a long time²—that I did not take the golden cloak which Jupiter wears in his temple in Messenia. I could have given him a wollen one for it."

¹ eadem quae.

² Jampridem, jamdudum take the Present for the English Perfect, the Imperfect for English Pluperfect. 'Jampridem miror' = 'I have long been wondering.' 'Jampridem mirabar' = 'I had been for a long time wondering.'

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Rule 28.

- A. **Open Conditions**, *i.e.* those in which we assume the condition without implying anything as to its fulfilment.

INDICATIVE in both clauses.

Any tense possible according to the sense.

Si hoc facis, peccas.

If you do this you do wrong.

Si hoc { facies } peccabis.
{ feceris }

If you do this (Fut.) you will do wrong.

Si hoc fecisti peccavisti.

If you did this you did wrong.

- B. Conditions in which it is implied that the fulfilment of the condition is **improbable but possible**.

PRESENT (OR PERFECT) SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses.

Si hoc facias, pecces.

If you { did } this, you would do wrong.
{ were to do }

- C. **Impossible Conditions**, *i.e.* those in which it is implied that the fulfilment of the condition is impossible.

- (1) Relating to **Present** time, or to **continuous** action in **Past** time.

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses.

Si hoc faceres, peccares.

If you were doing this, you would be doing wrong.

(implying "but you are not doing it.")

or; *If you had been doing this you would have been doing wrong.*

- (2) Relating to **Past** time.

PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE in both clauses.

Si hoc fecisses, peccavisses.

If you had done this, you would have done wrong.

(implying "But you did not do it.")

The tense and mood are generally the same in the protasis (*i.e.* the *if* clause) and the apodosis (*i.e.* the conclusion). But in C the condition may obviously relate to *past* time and so be Pluperfect, while the conclusion relates to *present* time and is therefore Imperfect.¹

e.g. Si hoc fecisses, nunc felix esses.

If you had done this you would now be happy.

The apodosis need not always be a statement, but may be a command or wish, *e.g.* Ne veneris nisi jussero. Moriari si me facti poenitet.

The English Present is often used for what is really a Future action. In Latin the Future or Fut. Perf. **must always** be used in these cases, *e.g.* Si id feceris (or facies) peccabis = '*If you do this you will do wrong.*'

FURTHER EXAMPLES OF CONDITIONALS

A. Parvi sunt foris arma nisi est consilium domi.

Arms are worth little abroad unless there is wisdom at home.

Si te hic offendero, moriere.

If I meet you here, you shall die.

Non si tibi ante profuit, semper proderit.

If it helped you before it will not help you always.

B. Nonne sapiens, si fame conficiatur, abstulerit cibum alteri ?

Would not a wise man, if he were being starved, take food from another ?

C. Non pacem peterem nisi utilem crederem.

I should not be asking for peace if I did not think it advantageous.

Si Camillus tale fecisset, non nobis exemplo esset.

Had Camillus done such a thing, he would not be an example to us.

¹ Moreover, in Impossible Conditions, if the verb of the apodosis is *possum*, *debeo*, *oportet*, or a gerundive (or any verb expressing *obligation* or *possibility*), it is regularly put in the Indicative.

e.g. Si patriam perdidisset interficiendus erat.

If he had betrayed his country he should have been put to death.

Exercise 202 [A].

1. If you are able to do this, you ought to do it at once.
2. If I could do this, I would do it at once.
3. They always gave money to the poor if they seemed to need it.
4. If the prisoners escape, we shall be punished.
5. If I thought you needed my advice, I would try to help you.
6. If they had started at once, they would have caught the enemy off their guard.
7. I should not be here now if I had listened to the advice of my friends.
8. Do not leave your home unless I bid you.
9. If they were asked for help, they gave it readily.
10. If they had been asked for help, they ought to have given it readily.
11. They were always willing to help us, if we deserved help.

Exercise 203 [B].

1. Never promise if you cannot keep your word.
2. If once¹ we reach the camp, we shall be safe.
3. If the river were not so deep, we might have crossed it on foot.
4. They would have shown themselves more prudent if they had landed their forces immediately.
5. You would be wrong if you thought that I did this on purpose.
6. If a man cannot restrain his temper, he is a burden to his friends.
7. Whether he praises or blames you, you know that you have acted rightly.

¹ Expressed by Fut. Perf.

8. If reinforcements had come, the enemy would have been compelled to raise the siege.

9. If they take up arms against their country, they will deserve to be condemned to death.

10. If he saw a man suffering wrongfully, he always tried to help him.

11. If only we had kept silence, we should not now be suffering such misfortunes.

Exercise 204 [A].

1. If he had not mocked me I should perhaps have forgiven him.

2. They may hate me if only they fear me.

3. If Caesar had thrown a bridge over the Rhine, the Germans could easily have been subdued.

4. If we attack the enemy at once, there is no doubt that we shall conquer them.

5. If he were my own brother I should condemn him none the less.

6. Had not Publius Scipio promised to accompany him the war would never have been entrusted to Lucius Scipio.

7. But for the imposition of a tribute, the Macedonians would be more prosperous now than under their own kings.

8. If a man has wronged me, I take my revenge on him by law, not by violence.

9. When once Italy is reached, I will lead you straight to Rome.

10. Unless a man uses bribery, it is of no advantage to him to stand for the consulship.

11. Whether you go to Rome or remain here,¹ I shall not leave the city.

¹ *Whether . . . or . . . in double Conditions seu . . . seu (sive).*

Whether . . . or . . . in double Questions utrum . . . an . . .

Exercise 205 [B].

1. Poets starve at Rome unless rich men relieve them.
2. If we march straight to Romè we shall feast to-night in the Capitol.
3. In former times if a man showed himself capable of ruling, he was generally elected consul.
4. Whether this news is true or false, we must remain where we are.
5. I should certainly have brought you the news in time had I been able.
6. If the enemy make an attack at once, I am afraid we shall not be able to resist them.
7. Were I to make such a request of you, you would be rightly angry.
8. When once you return home you will find many friends.
9. If I had never been poor I should not now enjoy my riches.
10. If Gracchus aimed at royal power he was rightly put to death.

Exercise 206 [A].

1. We will take the place of the front rank if they are cut down.
2. If I were on the spot I should know what ought to be done.
3. Unless you remind him, he will have forgotten in three days.
4. Were he able to be present, he would certainly now be speaking for this bill.
5. If he should be present to-morrow, he would speak for this bill.

6. If Fabius had had more influence in the state, Varro would never have been elected consul.
7. If he does anything contrary to the law, punish him.
8. If a man does anything contrary to the law, he must be punished.
9. He would be arrested if anyone caught sight of him.
10. He would be in prison now if only we could have arrested him.

Exercise 207 [B].

1. If they have conspired against the state, they deserve to be punished.
2. If they had not conspired, they would still be living in the city.
3. If once you reach the shore, you will be able to embark.
4. Had you listened to my advice, you would have kept your riches.
5. If they repent of their crime, they will be forgiven.
6. Unless you spare this man, you will be an object of hatred to all.
7. If he had consulted his own interests, he would not have lost the friendship of Caesar.
8. If we were to send help to the Carthaginians, we should incur the anger of the Romans.
9. If they come to see you, tell them to wait until I arrive.
10. You must use your riches well, if you wish to be happy.
11. You ought to have done this whether you wished to or not.

Exercise 208 [A].

“Fellow-soldiers, we have lost many brave men through treachery, and have been abandoned by our friends. But we must not lose heart; and if we cannot conquer, let us choose rather to perish gloriously, than to fall into the hands of barbarians, who will inflict upon us the greatest miseries. If our ancestors had not been willing to encounter the vast forces of the Persians, Greece would now be in the hands of the barbarians. If we show ourselves worthy of them, we too shall benefit our country. The gods, the avengers of perjury, will be favourable to us, and seeing that they are offended by the violation of treaties, they will also follow us to battle, and combat for us.”

Exercise 209 [B].

The general delivered this speech before his men: “You see how great the forces of the enemy are, and how impregnable their position is. If we attack them we shall without doubt suffer a severe defeat. But if, on the contrary, they were to leave their position and attack us, we should have good hopes of victory, for they have to cross a deep river and climb a steep hill, before they can reach our lines.” By these words the general with difficulty persuaded his men to remain within their fortifications; and his advice was the salvation of the army. For if the Romans had attacked the enemy, who were superior to them both in numbers and position, they would undoubtedly have been conquered.

Exercise 210 [A].

After the death of Tib. Gracchus, C. Blossius showed his friendship for him in a marvellous way. For the senate decreed that all who had taken part with¹ Gracchus should be punished. Blossius, when accused before the consuls, excused himself on the ground of his friendship² for Gracchus. "Whether my judges condemn me," said he, "or whether they acquit me, I shall still always rejoice that I was the friend of Gracchus. If you, consuls, should bid me save my life by accusing Gracchus, I would not so save it. If I must die, let me die loyal to my friends." The two consuls hesitated. At last one of them asked Blossius "If Gracchus had ordered you to set fire to the temple of Jupiter would you have done it?" To which Blossius replied, "Gracchus would not have ordered it."

Exercise 211 [B].

On receiving news of the approach of Fairfax, the governor of Raglan Castle called together his men, and spoke as follows: "If all were going well I should not conceive it to be my duty to consult the men whom I command. But since the enemy are already upon us, and we have not collected³ sufficient provisions, if there should be any here faint-hearted, or any that careth not to fight to the death in his Majesty's cause, let him depart, and be not burdensome to us in the siege. If I am able I will set⁴ him safe on the Welsh⁵ side of the river." If the king himself had addressed them the men could not have shown more zeal than they did on hearing this speech, and if there was any there desirous of going he did not dare to confess it.

¹ consentire cum.

² amicitiae excusatione uti.

³ frumentum comparare.

⁴ exponere

⁵ Celticus.

PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS

TRANSLATION OF 'ANY.'

Quisquam (adj. *ullus*) to be used when 'any' is *exclusive*; *i.e.* with negatives and sentences virtually negative. Sentences are virtually negative (1) when they contain *vix*, *aegre*, *sine*, (2) when they are questions expecting the answer 'no,' (3) when they are comparative, "he was taller than any of his friends."

Quivis, *Quilibet* to be used when 'any' is *inclusive*; *i.e.* when it means *anybody like you*, or *everybody*.

Quis (adj. *quis*) only used after *si*, *nisi*, *num*, *ne* (and after *quo*, *quanto*, with comparatives).

Aliquis only when *someone* may be substituted for *anyone* in the English without altering the sense.

TRANSLATION OF 'SOME.'

Aliquis and *Quispiam* are the ordinary words.

aliquis should be used for 'somebody,' when it means 'a person of consequence.'

Quidam = a certain man, almost the Eng. Indefinite Article. As a rule it *follows* its noun.

Nescio quis = some one or other, no definite person indicated.

Alii . . . alii = some . . . others.

Nonnulli = some, of number, opposed to *none*, and often implying *a considerable number*.

Aliquot = some, of number.

EXAMPLES.

Quivis de virtute loquitur, **vix quisquam** virtutem praestat.
Everyone talks about virtue, scarcely anyone practises it.

Si quid cognovisti, loquere.
If you have learnt anything, speak.

Forsitan dicat **aliquis** . . .
Perhaps some one may say . . .

Hic nescio quis loquitur.
There is someone or other talking here.

OTHER PRONOUNS.

Quisquis, whoever (adj. *quicumque*).

Ecquis? Interrog. and Indef. combined,—‘anyone at all’?

Quisnam? = the Interrog. *quis*.

Quisque, each man.

Its commonest uses are with superlatives and ordinals; *e.g.* *optimus quisque* (all the best men), *decimus quisque* (every tenth man, or one in ten), and in combination with *suus* or *ipse*; *e.g.* *suam quisque salutem petit* (each man seeks his own safety).

ADVERBS.

Unquam (ever) and *usquam* (anywhere) can only be used according to the rule of *quisquam*; *i.e.* with negatives and virtual negatives.

Quo (anywhither), *quando* (at any time), in the same way correspond to *quis*.

e.g. **Si quando** peccaveris, ne celaveris **unquam**.

If ever you sin, never conceal it.

Contrast—Ne **semper** celaveris =

Do not be { *ever*
always } *concealing it.*

Alicubi (somewhere), *aliquando* (some time, once upon a time), *aliquantum* (some quantity), *aliquamdiu* (for some time), correspond to *aliquis*. The syllable *ali* always corresponds to the Eng. *some*, and these words must not be used for the Eng. *any*, except when it stands for *some*.

Nonnunquam (sometimes) corresponds to *nonnulli*.

Exercise 212 [A].

1. If all the best men have perished, who is left to rule the state?
2. If he ever saw his men suffering hardships, he tried to help them himself.
3. The order was given that each man should see to his own safety.
4. It is of the utmost importance to us to find out if anyone has been here during our absence.
5. The horse has been lost for a long time, and no one can find it anywhere.
6. He said that no one had ever persuaded him to take bribes.
7. If the city is taken, I do not suppose the enemy will spare any of the citizens.
8. Having remained within their lines for some time, our men at last sallied out against the enemy.
9. A philosopher has said that fire is the origin of all things.
10. There is no doubt that a considerable number of the enemy are trying to attack us in the rear.

Exercise 213 [B].

1. On my return I was told that someone had come to see me.
2. I returned as quickly as possible, but could not find anyone in my house.
3. Did anyone ask you what ought to be done?
4. If anyone were to say that there was no hope, he would be killed by the citizens.
5. I am willing to send anyone at all to find out what is going on.

6. Someone or another has said that a long life is the greatest misfortune.

7. For some time it was asserted that all our best troops were lost.

8. There is no doubt that they perished, but their bodies have never been found anywhere.

9. When I return to Rome I shall find out if anyone has bought my house.

10. An order was given that whoever plundered the houses should be put to death.

Exercise 214 [A].

[Exercises 214-222 are for revision.]

If after so great a victory the Gauls had immediately pursued the fugitives, Rome would certainly have been taken, so astonished and terrified were the citizens at the return of those who had escaped from the battle. The Gauls, however, not imagining the victory to be so great as it really was, gave way¹ to feasting and plundering the camp. Accordingly numbers, who wished to leave the city, had opportunity to escape, while those who remained were able to make preparations for defending the city. The latter, quitting the rest of the city, retired to the Capitol, which they fortified by strong ramparts; for they knew that if the Gauls attacked them they would need all their strength.

¹ *se dedere, dat.*

Exercise 215 [A].

There can be little doubt that the guides, whether through treachery or ignorance, were mainly responsible for the disaster. If the army had marched by the main road they would have arrived unmolested, and could have joined battle on the following day on equal terms. But following a shorter way across the fields, they found the road blocked on one side by a marsh, and on the other by cliffs. Then the general called together his officers, and said, "If we advance we shall run the risk of¹ being surprised by the enemy; on the other hand, if² we retreat we shall perhaps arrive too late. Had we only kept to the main road, we should already be approaching the city." No one replied at once, and before any plan could be determined the cry was raised that the enemy were upon them.

Exercise 216 [A].

A young Spartan, named Isadas, distinguished himself³ particularly in this action. He had neither armour nor clothes upon his body, and he held a spear in one hand and a sword in the other. In this condition⁴ he quitted his home with the utmost eagerness, and was the first to enter the battle. He dealt mortal⁵ wounds at every blow, and overthrew all who opposed him without receiving any hurt himself.⁶ Whether the enemy were dismayed at so strange a sight, or whether the gods preserved him on account of his extraordinary valour, it is certain that no man ever accomplished such marvellous deeds. It is said that after the battle the Ephori decreed him a crown for his valour, but fined him a thousand drachmae for having exposed himself to so great a danger without arms.

¹ Use 'in periculum adduci ut.'

² Sin = 'but if' (introducing a second and contrary condition), 'If not,' 'otherwise,' without a verb = *si minus*.

³ *eniteo*.

⁴ *thus armed*.

⁵ *mortifer*.

⁶ *ipse incolumis*.

Exercise 217 [A].

On the very day on which the Senate was deliberating whether they ought to summon back to Rome the Master of the Horse, news was brought that he had led out the troops which had been left in the camp, and in a battle with the Samnites had suffered a great disaster. The Dictator would not even wait to learn what the Senate determined, but hurried back to the camp. The Master of the Horse, summoned before the tribunal,¹ was asked why he, to whose care the safety of the Roman people had been entrusted, had without the orders of the Dictator led into battle the legions which he had been ordered to keep within the camp. The only reply he could make was² that he had thought he ought to use the legions which he commanded for the good of the Roman people whenever an opportunity offered.³

Exercise 218 [A].

An Indian⁴ chief was taken prisoner by the Spaniards, and because he was a man of influence⁵ among the tribes they cut off his hands, with the intention of disabling him⁶ from fighting any more against them. But he, returning home eager to avenge this wrong, incited his countrymen not to let the Spaniards think their accustomed valour had forsaken them. And when they saw the cruelty which the Spaniards had practised⁷ towards him and others his companions, they burnt their homes, to prevent anyone's wishing to return, and fell upon the Spanish settlement, with minds made up either to drive the Spaniards out of the town or to perish themselves in battle. While the battle was being fought the maimed chieftain himself carried arrows in his mouth with which to supply the combatants.

¹ tribunal (*n.*). ² 'he could only answer this.' ³ 'was given.'

⁴ Indicus (*subst.* Indus).

⁵ Use 'pollere.'

⁶ 'that he might not be able.'

⁷ 'used.'

Exercise 219 [B].

The Romans, when they heard of the disaster which had befallen Regulus, fitted out a large fleet for the rescue of the survivors; while the Carthaginians, rightly judging that the resolution of the Romans would not be broken by one calamity, also began to build a new fleet to protect them from another invasion. But in vain did they endeavour to reduce Clypea before the Romans could reach it. The small garrison, with surprising courage, repelled all attacks, and held out till the ensuing summer, when the Roman fleet arrived. A naval battle took place off the Hermaean promontory. The Romans gained the day, and took on board the defenders of Clypea who had so well earned their safety.

Exercise 220 [B].

Hanno was now entrusted with the command. If he had followed¹ the example of Hamilcar, the Romans would without doubt have been defeated. But before he had held the command long he proved himself entirely unworthy of confidence. If ever he won a partial success,² he was unable to make use of it; and after having won, as he thought, a complete victory, he allowed his camp to be surprised and taken. ~~Under~~ these circumstances the Carthaginians once more offered Hamilcar the command, although they could not expect a man whom they had treated so unjustly before to come to their help. But Hamilcar, still placing his country before all else, consented to take the command. By his strict discipline, by his energy, and by his great influence with the Numidian chiefs, he defeated the enemy in a pitched battle, and recovered a considerable number of cities which had revolted.

¹ *used.*² *ex parte rem prospere gerere.*

Exercise 221 [B].

When Ulysses was cast upon¹ the island of Phaeacia, he was treated with all the hospitality which in those days strangers used everywhere to receive. Nausicaa, the king's daughter, was the first person who met him, and she conducted him to her father's palace. The best raiment which the maidens had woven was bestowed upon him; and he enjoyed the most sumptuous feast which his hosts could provide. On the next day games were held, and he was asked to join in² them, an honour which he at first refused. But afterwards, stung by the insults of the king's son, the only man who forgot his duty to a guest, he showed that his strength was almost as great now as when he fought against Troy, and he surpassed the Phaeacians³ in their own sports.

Exercise 222 [B].

If ever a man⁴ deserved to be well treated⁵ by his fellow citizens it was Tib. Gracchus. Son of a father who had pacified Spain (a work⁶ in which a whole series of Consuls had failed), and connected by birth with both the conquerors of Africa,⁷ he might have easily claimed the first place in the state, if he had been willing to obey the laws without⁸ trying to change them. But he had to journey through Etruria to his first province, Spain, and that country, then desolate, devoid of freemen, cultivated by slaves, made such an impression⁹ on him that he determined to find a remedy if he perished in the attempt. All the best men of Rome favoured the laws he proposed, and had not a tribune stood in the way he would have accomplished his work with the goodwill of most, if not all.¹⁰

¹ ejectus in. ² interesse. ³ Phaeaces.

⁴ Translate '*Tib. Gracchus, if any other, was worthy,*' etc.

⁵ beneficiis afficere.

⁶ '*That which (id quod) many other consuls had relinquished without success*' (re infecta).

⁷ uterque Africanus.

⁸ '*and had not*' = nec.

⁹ commovere.

¹⁰ ne dicam omnes.

CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

Rule 29. Concessive Clauses have their verb (a) in the Indicative when what is conceded is allowed to be a fact; (b) in the Subjunctive if it is only conceded as a hypothesis for argument's sake.

Quamvis, licet, quum, ut are only to be used with SUBJUNCTIVE.

Quanquam is only to be used with INDICATIVE.

Etsi, etiamsi, tametsi may be used with either according to meaning.

EXAMPLES.

- (a) Romani **quanquam** fessi **erant** procedunt.

The Romans advanced in spite of being tired.

Cur nolint, **etiamsi** tacent, satis dicunt.

Though they are silent they show clearly why they are unwilling.

- (b) Quod turpe est, id, **quamvis** occultetur, tamen honestum fieri nullo modo potest.

What is base cannot be made honourable, however much it be disguised.

Rectum est, **etiamsi** nobis indigna audiamus, iracundiam repellere.

It is right to restrain our passions, even though we should hear things that we resent (things unworthy of us).

Exercise 223 [A].

1. Although they were not convicted of treason, they inflicted great injury on the state.

2. Even if you denied this no one would believe you.

3. However³ great the numbers of the enemy may be, we must not despair,

4. Knowing, as they did, that their plans were discovered, they still pretended to be innocent.

5. I am willing that you should do this, though I should not have done it myself.

6. Although the general had won many successes, he was disliked by his troops.

7. I am resolved to tell the truth even if my enemies threaten me with death.

8. Although Caesar had already borrowed¹ immense sums, men still trusted him.

9. Although he had deceived me five times, I should still² have trusted him.

10. I should be quite contented even if I had to go into exile for a little time.

Exercise 224 [A].

1. Though he were to offer me a great price, I should not sell the farm.

2. We must get to Rome to-day, however³ many obstacles hinder us.

3. Though I know very well he is guilty, I shall do my best to acquit him.

4. Great though his army may be, he will not risk all on one battle.

¹ mutuari.

² nihilo minus, or nihilo secius.

³ quamvis.

5. Even if he were chieftain of all Gaul, I would not spare him.

6. Though he was the richest man in all this country¹ he gave little money to the poor.

7. Though the gods are on our side, we shall need the sword.

8. Though they were my best legions, I should send them back to Pompey.

9. Caesar sent back the two legions Pompey had sent him, though they were the best he had.

10. However great my peril was, I should not try to avoid it in such a cause.

Exercise 225 [B].

1. Anyone can remain silent, even if he is angry.

2. They had resolved to remain silent, however many tortures might be inflicted upon them.

3. They held out for some time, although they knew that there was no hope of safety.

4. Believing, as I do,² that you wish to serve me, yet I cannot accept your help.

5. I should never believe you, although you bound yourself by an oath.

6. At this crisis the allies deserted, though they had promised to remain faithful.

7. We shall still be soldiers, even if the army is disbanded.

8. The battle raged fiercely for a long time, although we were greatly inferior to the enemy in numbers.

9. You ought not to say such things in the presence of others, however true you may believe them to be.

10. Although he tried to conceal his indignation, there is no doubt that he was annoyed at this.

¹ regio

² = *Although I believe.*

Exercise 226 [B].

1. Although they had long been living in a foreign land, they observed the customs of their ancestors.

2. They refused to do this, though it was to their own advantage.

3. We will not yield to the enemy, however large their forces may be.

4. Although they were inferior to the enemy in numbers, they held their ground resolutely.

5. Clever as he was, he could not deceive us.

6. I cannot trust him, in spite of his promising to keep his word.

7. Although they were so poor, we could not offer them help.

8. Great as a general's power may be, he is always responsible to the government.

9. Even should they be brought to trial, they would without doubt be acquitted.

10. They were led out to execution,¹ in spite of the general's promise to spare their lives.

¹ ad necem.

Exercise 227 [A].

Although Lucullus had won many successes, he was unable to bring the war with Mithridates to a close. The king, after defeating Triarius in a pitched battle at Zela, had retreated to the mountains, satisfied with his success, and Lucullus gave orders for pursuit. But however desirous he might himself be of capturing the king, he found his men unwilling to follow him. Most of them had been absent from Italy for nearly twenty years, and since Lucullus had taken the command, they had suffered great hardships. Lucullus, though a good general, had none of that geniality which wins the affection of soldiers, and moreover he had been living in great luxury, though his soldiers often suffered from want. The result was that the army agreed to defend Pontus from Mithridates, but positively refused to undertake a new campaign.¹

Exercise 228 [A].

Though the army opposed to Caesar had been much more numerous he would nevertheless have come out of this campaign victorious. The discipline and experience of his soldiers were such that, although fortune might be adverse, they never lost heart. This appeared especially in the war round Dyrrhachium. Though the lines which they had constructed with so much trouble were assailed and the defenders driven out of them, there was no panic, nor did the soldiers scatter in flight in all directions over the country; but those who survived the defeat kept together, and retreated² along the road which led into the mountains. Next day Caesar had again an army, which, though³ diminished, was prepared to face all dangers manfully.

¹ war.² retreated in close order.³ Of the Concessive Conjunctions *quamvis* is most frequently used where the verb is omitted.

Exercise 229 [B].

However men may differ as to Napoleon's character, there can be no doubt that he acquired a wonderful influence over¹ his soldiers. If they sometimes grumbled at his orders in private,² yet, when he led them to battle, there was not a man who was not ready to risk his life for him. They did this,³ although it was evident that he for his part never tried to spare the lives of his men, but was resolved to crush the enemy, however great the losses on his own side⁴ might be. Thus it happened that France came off victorious in so many conflicts, although she was opposed by many powerful enemies at the same time.

Exercise 230 [B].

The determination of the Athenians remained unshaken, in spite of the desertion of so many of the Greek States. They readily granted to the Spartans the supreme command of the forces by sea as well as by land, although they themselves furnished two-thirds of the entire fleet. The great Themistocles tried to inspire the other Greeks with some of the enthusiasm which he had aroused in the Athenians. Had he not displayed as much wisdom as valour, the cause of Greek freedom would have been lost. By his advice the confederates⁵ bound themselves to resist to the death, and in case of success⁶ to consecrate to the Delphian god a tenth part of the property of all Grecian states which had surrendered to the Persians of their own accord.

¹ apud.² say 'secretly.'³ Translate 'idque' (omitting 'they did'). Cf. *καὶ ταῦτα*.⁴ of his own men. ⁵ allies. ⁶ if things happened well,

COMPARATIVE CLAUSES

Rule 30. When the Comparative Clause is meant to state an actual fact its verb is in the Indicative; but when it is a purely imaginary comparison the verb is in the Subjunctive.

In the first case the commonest words of comparison used are: *sicut* (just as), *perinde ac* (exactly as), *æque ac* (as much as), *aliter ac* (otherwise than), *alius ac* (different from), *idem ac* (the same as).

In the second case the commonest are: *velut*, *quasi*, *tanquam* (*si*).

EXAMPLES.

Poenas dedit **sicut** meritus est.

He was punished as he deserved.

Absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem **quasi** coram **adesset** horrebant.
They dreaded the cruelty of Ariovistus in his absence just as if he had been present.

Virtus **eadem** in homine **ac** deo **est**.

Virtue is the same in man as in God.

Exercise 231 [A].

1. He behaved just as if he were mad.
2. He was rewarded just as he deserved.
3. He fought as if the safety of the State depended on him alone.
4. I foresaw it all, just as it happened.
5. As you thought, his only object was¹ to deceive us.
6. He governs the State, not as circumstances demand, but as if he were setting an example to the rest of mankind.

¹ id solum egit ut.

7. He is not quite so devoted to us as you think.
8. His performance does not agree with his promise.
9. While¹ I value my own safety a great deal, I value that of the State a great deal more.
10. I envy you as being free from all cares of State.
11. As might be expected² in such times, it was long doubtful which side would conquer.
12. As often happens, he was tired of his task before he had finished it.

Exercise 232 [B].

1. They rushed into the river as if they were mad.
2. Our men have been defeated, just as I foretold.
3. It is our duty to treat others just as we wish them to treat us.
4. It was observed that he often turned round as if someone were pursuing him.
5. Considering their difficult position,³ they acted as wisely as they could.
6. Seeing is a different thing from believing.
7. There is no doubt that we have less leisure than our ancestors.
8. Their actions were not always in accordance with their promises.
9. They joined battle as if they had no fear of defeat.
10. The Greeks were not distinguished by the same virtues as the Romans.
11. He threw himself into the river, as if he really wished to save his enemy.
12. As was to be expected at such a crisis,³ the general was the only man who remained unmoved.

¹ Contrast the clauses by *ut . . . ita*, or by *quum . . . tum*. These should often be used for *both . . . and* or *not only . . . but also*, where one sentence is to be emphasised more than the other.

² 'ut' only. Cf. *satis impavidus ut in re trepida*, 'keeping presence of mind as much as could be expected in such a panic.'

³ *ut in tanto discrimine*.

Exercise 233 [A].

At the battle of Zama Hannibal showed the same resolution and the same skill in drawing up his line as he had shown fourteen years before at the battle of Cannae. But fortune was against him, and he went into the battle as if he himself knew it. The elephants, which before had often been a source of safety to the Carthaginians, now frightened by the shouting of the Romans, turned upon their own army, and threw the first line into confusion. The mercenaries formed¹ the first line and, as they fell back, the Carthaginians, drawn up in the second line, would not admit them through their ranks, and even charged them as if they were the enemy. This was not contrary to Hannibal's expectations. He ordered the third line, his veterans brought from Italy, to charge and drive the disorderly rabble off the field. Then at length the battle with the Romans was renewed.

Exercise 234 [A].

The messengers, as they had been commanded, informed the people that in three days they must leave their homes and depart to another place. These at first made no answer, as if they did not understand what was demanded of them. But the chieftain, who under the circumstances showed great presence of mind, asked the messengers to explain more clearly the reason for this demand. The latter replied that they were only acting in accordance with the orders they had received. Then from the whole village arose loud cries and groans, as if they had undergone sentence of death; and one and all crowded around the messengers, with as much fury and indignation as they could have shown if those men had themselves been responsible for their sufferings.

¹ consistere in.

Exercise 235 [B].

Antiochus had invaded Egypt at the beginning of spring. But it happened just as some of his followers had foretold. As soon as he approached Alexandria a Roman ambassador, Popillius, met him, and handed him a letter from the Senate. The king read it, and replied that he would call his friends to a council and consider it; but Popillius with his staff drew a line round¹ the king, and bade him not move from the spot before he had given him an answer. Nor did he reply to any of the questions which the king asked him, but stood silent as if he did not hear; until the king, frightened by the ambassador's boldness, promised to do what the Senate decreed. In like manner, wherever Romans went, they acted as if to them belonged the empire of the world.

Exercise 236 [B].

On hearing that he had been proscribed by Antony, Cicero fled for refuge to his villa,² which was close by the sea, and got on board a ship with the intention of crossing over into Macedonia. He put out several times, but was driven back by adverse winds, and at last returned to his villa, declaring that he would die in the country which he had so often saved. He went to bed, and slept well considering his critical position. His slaves, however, as if foreseeing his danger, aroused him, and placing him in a litter carried him through the woods towards the sea. He was soon overtaken by the soldiers, who had been sent in pursuit of him; and when they came up he forbade his slaves to offer any resistance, and stretching his neck out of the litter bade the soldiers complete their work.

¹ *circumscribere.*

² *villa.*

ORATIO OBLIQUA

Rule 31. In Latin it is much commoner than in English to report a long speech not in the exact words of the speaker, but in the Indirect form, or **Oratio Obliqua**. Each clause in this will be either an Indirect Statement, or an Indirect Command, or an Indirect Question, or a clause dependent on one of these; and the mood and tense must be determined by the rules already given.¹

But observe—

(1) The Oratio Obliqua being continuous, the verb of "saying" which introduces it is not to be repeated before each clause, and a verb of command or questioning may be understood from one of saying and *vice versâ*.

(2) Where a command comes in the middle of Oratio Obliqua the *ut* is not expressed, though if it is a prohibition the *ne* must be expressed.

(3) Questions in Oratio Obliqua may be expressed by the Infinitive when they are asked for rhetorical purposes, and not to obtain an answer, and are practically equivalent to negative statements. Questions which in the direct form are in the 1st or 3rd Person are generally rhetorical.

e.g. the following are rhetorical questions: "*Am I a coward that I should fly without striking a blow?*" "*Is freedom a possession to be lightly esteemed?*" (Num libertatem parvi aestimandam esse?)

¹ For Indirect Statement, see pp. 38, 42; for Indirect Command, p. 62; for Indirect Question, p. 88; for clauses dependent on these, p. 96; and for the Sequence of Tenses, p. 2.

(4) All *pronouns* representing the 1st and 2nd Persons must be changed into the 3rd Person.

e.g. ego, meus, nos, noster, become se, suus.¹

tu, tuus, vos, vester, become ille, illius, is, ejus, etc.

hic and iste become ille and is.

Adverbs require similar changes :

hodie becomes illo die.

hic becomes ibi.

nunc becomes jam or tunc.

The following example will illustrate these points :

“The general asked his men why they hesitated, and urged them to advance at once. He reminded them that everything depended on their bravery, and declared that if they shirked the battle they would disgrace him and their country. Was it credible, he demanded, that he was addressing the same men who had so often defeated the enemy?”

“Imperator suos interrogavit cur haesitarent : statim progredenterentur, omnia enim in illorum virtute esse posita ; quodsi pugnam detrectassent illos dedecori fore et sibi et patriae. Num credibile esse se eosdem adloqui qui hostem toties vicissent ?”

Notice here that the English verbs “urged,” “reminded,” “declared,” “demanded,” are all understood in Latin from the one introductory word “interrogavit” ; that the command “progredenterentur” is expressed without the *ut* ; and that the Infinitive “esse” represents a rhetorical question.

Notice also that the Pluperfect “detrectassent” stands for the Future Perfect of the Direct Speech.

¹ Se and suus represent either the speaker alone or the speaker and the people addressed, where the speaker identifies himself with them.

ORATIO RECTA.

Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci *vellem*, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod *me* invito iter per provinciam per vim *tentavistis*, memoriam deponere *possum*?

But if I were willing to forget the old insult, can I also put aside the memory of more recent wrongs, inasmuch as against my will you forced a way through the Roman province?

N.B. Here, as the form of the conditional *si vellet* shows, the infinitive *posse* implies negation, and the question is rhetorical.

O. R.

Ariovistus me consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam *appetit*: cur *hunc* tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum *judicat*? *Mihi* quidem *persuadetur*, cognitis *meis* postulatis, eum neque *meam* neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum *intulerit*, quid tandem *veremini*? aut cur de *nostra* virtute aut de *mea* diligentia *desperatis*?

O. O.

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

His Caesar ita respondit: Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci *vellet*, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod *se* invito iter per provinciam per vim *tentavissent*, memoriam deponere *posse*?

Dixit—*Ariovistum se* consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam *appetisse*: cur *illum* tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum *judicaret*? *Sibi* quidem *persuaderi*, cognitis *suis* postulatis, eum neque *suam* neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum *intulisset*, quid tandem *vererentur*? aut cur de *sua* virtute aut de *ipsius* diligentia *desperarent*?

During my consulship Ariovistus most earnestly coveted the friendship of the Roman people. Why does anyone suppose

that he will so hastily cast off his allegiance? For my part I am convinced that when he is acquainted with my demands he will not slight either my favour or that of the Roman people. But if under the impulse of rage and madness he does wage war upon us, why, I ask, are you afraid? or why do you doubt either our courage or my diligence?

O. R.

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis *faciet*, in eam partem *ibunt* atque ibi *erunt Helvetii* ubi eos *constituisti*; sin bello persequi *perseverabis*, *reminiscere* veteris incommodi populi Romani. Quod improvise unum pagum *adortus es* cum ii, qui flumen *transierant* suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob *hanc rem tuae* magnopere virtuti *tribueris* neve nos *despexeris*.

O. O.

Is ita cum Caesare egit: si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis *faceret*, in eam partem *ituros* atque ibi *futuros Helvetios*, ubi eos *Caesar constituisset*; sin bello persequi *perseveraret*, *reminisceretur* veteris incommodi populi Romani. Quod improvise unum pagum *adortus esset* cum ii, qui flumen *transiissent*, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob *eam rem suae* magnopere virtuti *tribueret*, neve *se ipsos despiceret*.

If the people of Rome make peace with the Helvetii, the Helvetii will go to that part of the country which you have assigned to them, and will remain there. But should you persist in harrying them with war—remember the former disaster which befell the Roman people. As to the fact of your having fallen unexpectedly upon a single canton, when those who had crossed the river could not bring help to their friends, do not on this account think too highly of your own valour, or treat us with scorn.

Exercise 237 [A].

Put into Oratio Obliqua after a verb in a Historic tense :—

1. Deliver up to me the hostages I demanded.
2. Why did they refuse to follow him ?
3. I do not wish to betray these men who are under my protection.
4. Do you suppose that you alone know this ?
5. If you do this, all men will praise you.
6. If they had followed us, they would have reached¹ the city in safety.
7. Let us advance to attack the enemy.
8. Follow me, fellow-soldiers, and we shall easily overcome the enemy.
9. We ought not always to consult our own interests.
10. They were prevented by a storm from reaching the harbour.
11. To-day we have won a great victory.

Exercise 238 [B].

1. Why did you persuade the allies to revolt ?
2. Let us depart at once, and never return to this place.
3. I told you before what the result of the battle would be.
4. Give me what I asked you for, and I will depart.
5. When do you suppose that the reinforcements, for which we are waiting, will arrive ?
6. We have stormed the walls, but the citadel is not in our hands.
7. Friends, let us not despair of safety.
8. You ought to have sent us help more quickly.
9. Was he mad to say such things ?
10. If this is true, I refuse to help you any longer.
11. Unless help had arrived, all the citizens would have died of starvation.

¹ *perventuros fuisse.* The Future Participle with *fuisse* always represents the English *would have . . .* in Indirect Statement.

Exercise 239 [A].

Put into Oratio Obliqua after a verb in a Historic tense:—

1. Why have you invaded my country ?
2. Return to your own country.
3. The Carthaginians attacked us and 700 of their own men, 200 of ours were killed.
4. Let us not forget the wrongs of our allies, but avenge them speedily.
5. You have shown to-day more valour than they.
6. When we return to Rome we will enquire into this.
7. I cannot help you now. If you come to-morrow I will consider what I can do.
8. Three days ago we could have left the camp, now we are compelled to stay here whether we will or not.
9. Camillus, your fellow-citizens beg and pray you to return and save the state.
10. If you stay in my house you will certainly be attacked by these men.

Exercise 240 [B].

1. Where can we stay to-night ?
2. I am not sure that I shall reach you in time.
3. The two legions which I had I have sent to Pompey.
4. Here there is no safety either for me or for you.
5. If he kept his word he would be here now.
6. Let us all remember that liberty depends for us on this one battle.
7. Never give away your money to a man you do not know.
8. It is not easy, my friend, to think of the interests of¹ your fellow-citizens and at the same time of your own.
9. Is my friend to be neglected because he is away ?
10. Why should I humour a man who is my father's freedman ?

¹ consulere, *dat.*

Exercise 241 [A].

Labienus was the next to speak, and he expressed contempt for Caesar's forces. They must not imagine, he said, that this was the army which conquered Gaul and Germany. He was present himself at the battles fought in those countries, and was not rashly stating facts beyond his knowledge.¹ A very small fraction of that army survived. Many had been destroyed by pestilence, many had gone home. Had they not heard that regiments had been manufactured² at Brundisium, out of the wounded that had been left behind? The forces which they saw before them were raw recruits, and most of them came from colonies beyond the Po. Moreover the flower of the army had perished in the two engagements at Dyrrhachium. He himself finally would swear never to return to the camp unless victorious; let all the rest follow his example.

Exercise 242 [A].

According to the historian Livy,³ Appius declared to the assembled Senate that he wished he was deaf so that he might not hear the disgraceful counsels which were that day dishonouring the Roman name. He greatly regretted, he said, their change of temper; it was very different from the temper of former days. Whither had their pride and courage fled? Had they not once boasted that they would have opposed Alexander himself if in the period of their youth he had dared to invade Italy? Let them not now deliver up to Lucanians and wretched Greeks⁴ what their fathers had won by the sword.

¹ *which he had not ascertained.*

² *made.*

³ *Apud Livium scriptum invenimus.*

⁴ *Graeculus, the diminutive expressing contempt.*

Exercise 243 [A].

The terms of peace, heavy though they were, were only such as they expected under the circumstances;¹ and Hannibal dragged down with his own hands from the rostrum an orator who was recommending the continuance of the war. The people were indignant with Hannibal for thus infringing upon their liberty of speech; but Hannibal replied that they must forgive him if, after serving thirty-six years in the camp, he had forgotten the manners of the forum. Livy relates that the terms agreed upon by Scipio and the Carthaginian government were then referred to the Senate at Rome, and were accepted by them, both because they felt that they were sufficiently severe, and also because they feared that if they rejected them the Carthaginians would renew the war.

Exercise 244 [A].

The general then summoned a council of war and spoke thus: (*Or. Obl.*) "We must now decide whether it is to our advantage to hold our position or to retreat while we still have the opportunity. The reinforcements, which we have so long expected, have not arrived; and for my part I believe we are no match for the enemy. But I know we can trust the courage and endurance of our men, and if it is your wish, I am prepared to hold out as long as possible. Tell me plainly your opinion, for I shall do nothing without your approval." When the general had finished his speech, many different opinions were expressed; but at length it was decided that, considering the numbers of the enemy, it would be wiser to retreat and not to run the risk of a severe defeat.

¹ in tali re.

Exercise 245 [A].

Caesar, when the report of the Senate's action reached him, addressed his soldiers. He told them what the Senate had done, and why they had done it. "For nine years he and his army had served their country loyally, and had won many victories. They had driven the Germans over the Rhine; they had made Gaul a Roman province; and the Senate had now broken the laws of the state, and had deposed the tribunes because they spoke in his defence. They had declared that the state was in danger, and had called Italy to arms, when he himself had in no wise injured them." The soldiers whom Pompey supposed disaffected, declared with one consent that they would follow their commander and the tribunes. In all the army only one officer proved false.

Exercise 246 [A].

When Sulla had overcome his enemies and assumed supreme power, he assembled the senate and demanded with the utmost eagerness that Caius Marius should at once be declared an enemy to the state. No one dared to oppose him until Scaevola, on being questioned, refused to express an opinion. When, however, Sulla repeatedly asked him in a threatening voice to give his opinion, at length he replied, (*Or. Obl.*) "You may show me the troops of soldiers with which you have surrounded the senate house; you may threaten me with death again and again; but you will never compel me to say that Marius, by whom the Roman state was saved, is an enemy to Rome."

Exercise 247 [A].

There are men in our times who seem to desire not only to change the laws (which¹ perhaps would be a laudable desire²), but to upset the whole state.³ I was listening to one such yesterday as he addressed a crowd of artisans in the forum. (*Or. Obl.*) "Who is it," he asked them, "that oppresses us? Who is it for whom we pile up wealth, while we want ourselves money to buy food? You yourselves can answer (the question), nor is there any need for me to tell you. Our senators have the power to prevent good laws being carried, and M. Crassus buys the consulship every year for himself and his friends. Fellow-citizens,⁴ there is only one remedy—let us drive them from the city. Let us teach them by fire and bloodshed how great a wrong they have done to the people."

Exercise 248 [A].

Three days after the setting out of the troops from Rome the gloomy intelligence arrived that the enemy, after having utterly routed the Roman army on the 12th of March, were now in possession of the city of Corioli, and all the territory and other property of the allies. (*Or. Obl.*) "I am the only man," said the messenger, "who has survived the battle. The enemy, flushed with recent victory, are coming in, and must⁵ even now be not more than three miles from the city. So savage is their temper, that I am sure no one, however old and infirm, will be spared." Having heard this the Senate determined at once to send envoys to meet the enemy on their approach, with the intention of suing for peace.

¹ id quod.² worthy of praise.³ rempublicam evertere.⁴ A Vocative in the middle of a speech will usually be simply omitted in *Oratio Obliqua*.⁵ Use 'sine dubio.'

Exercise 249 [B].

He had now won a decisive victory, and it seemed certain that the campaign would shortly be brought to a successful issue, when all his hopes were dashed to the ground¹ by the refusal of his troops to continue the war. They declared that they were worn out with the hardships of the campaign, and that the prospect² of bringing the war to an end seemed as distant as ever. Why, they asked, must they leave their country and all that was dear to them and undergo every kind of suffering that their general might win the glory of a barren victory? They asserted that, even if they pursued the enemy, they would be unable to overtake them in their mountain fastnesses, while even the victories which they had already won had been purchased at the cost of much Roman blood.

Exercise 250 [B].

The general replied that no one could be more anxious than himself to consult the interests of his men; but he reminded them how foolish it was to lose the advantages of a victory well-nigh assured. They must not think, he said, that he had undertaken this campaign merely in the hope of winning glory for himself. They would share equally with him in the fruits of victory, and if once the enemy were crushed, they might return home enriched with spoils taken from the enemy. He also pointed out that though the enemy were seeking refuge in the mountains, they had not yet reached them, and that if an immediate advance were made, it would be easy to overtake them before they reached a place of safety.

¹ perdo.

² spes.

Exercise 251 [B].

Turn into Or. Obl. after a Historic tense:—

Do not believe what is commonly asserted in the city, that I am seeking the consulship for the sake of a province and the wealth that many of our senators steal from the subject states of Rome. Can you think that I, who was once the dear friend of Cato, am so changed in mind? Indeed, I had rather give up all hope of office than involve myself in such disgrace. I have heard recently that the publicani of Cilicia asked our friend Cicero to give them his legionaries to collect the taxes with. He refused at first, but afterwards was prevailed upon. If they were not Romans the very soldiers would refuse to take part in such cruel work. But let us try to devote ourselves to philosophy, and forget evils which we cannot cure.

Exercise 252 [B].

On this night the king gathered round him his little band of followers, and in a few words said farewell to them. (*Or. Obl.*) "Gentlemen,"¹ he said, "your fortune has so long been linked with mine that the word which I speak to-night nothing but the last necessity forces me to utter. If there were yet a hope, I would still make use of your loyalty and your aid. Do not think that I value these lightly. You are the few who, having enjoyed with me the times of prosperity, refused to desert me in adversity. And for this I thank you. But permit me now to think of your safety, for the sake of which I shall to-morrow give myself up. Why should I destroy you with myself? When the rebels have me in their hands they will perhaps leave you free to escape whither you will."

¹ Omit the Vocative. See note 4, p. 190.

Exercise 253 [B].

Hearing of these immense numbers, Robert Guiscard assembled a council of his principal officers. (*Or. Obl.*) "You behold," said he, "your danger: you see how urgent¹ it is. The hills are covered with arms and standards; and the Emperor of the Greeks is accustomed to wars and triumphs. Union is our only safety.² Only bid me, and I am ready at once to yield the command to a worthier leader." The acclamation even of his foes assured him at this perilous moment of their confidence;³ and he thus continued, (*Or. Obl.*) "Let us trust in the reward of victory, and let us not leave cowards the means⁴ of escape. Burn your vessels and your baggage, and give battle on this spot." This resolution was unanimously approved, and Guiscard awaited in battle array the approach of the enemy. Perhaps he was not conscious that on the same ground Caesar and Pompey had formerly disputed the empire of the world.

Exercise 254 [B].

Turn into Or. Obl. after a Historic tense:—

I might have gone to Spain, where I should have had my brother to share my labours, and Hasdrubal instead of Hannibal for my foe. But hearing as I sailed along the coast of the arrival of the enemy in Gaul, I landed immediately, sent on my cavalry before, and moved my camp up to the Rhone. I am anxious to try whether Carthage in the last⁵ twenty years has produced a new race of citizens, or whether these are the same men whom we held so cheap when we let them go from Eryx. Would that this contest were for honour merely, not for very life! But you are fighting for Italy itself, and for your homes; nor is there another army in your rear to bar the enemy's way if you fail⁶ to conquer him. Let each one of you consider that the Senate is watching him, and that the fate of Rome depends upon his valour.

¹ Use verb.

² *Our safety depends on our union.*

³ *Even his private enemies showed by their applause that they trusted him.*

⁴ locus or facultas.

⁵ his.

⁶ Use nisi.

Exercise 255 [A].

Meanwhile the Carthaginians, knowing the weakness of their naval force at Lilybaeum, and fully conscious that the place would not hold out unless they sent help, resolved to despatch troops at once. Hannibal, son of Hamilcar, was despatched with all haste to Sicily with fifty ships and 10,000 troops. He moved his fleet among the Aegatian islands opposite to Lilybaeum, waiting the moment when he should be able to pass the rocks and reefs that girt the harbour. At length a favourable wind sprang up. He set sail, and, massing his troops on deck to be ready for an engagement, with a boldness that deserved success he made his way safely through the narrow entrance. In the meanwhile the Roman ships remained at anchor close by, the sailors looking on aghast at his rashness, and expecting to see him dashed against the rocks.

Exercise 256 [B].

The fight was fierce and tumultuous. The assailants were repulsed in their first attack, and several of their bravest officers were shot down in the act of storming the fortress sword in hand. The assault was renewed with greater success. The Indians were driven from one post to another. They disputed their ground inch by inch,¹ fighting with the utmost fury. Most of their veterans were cut to pieces, and after a long and bloody battle Philip and Canonchet, with a handful of surviving warriors, retreated from the fort and took refuge in the thickets of the neighbouring forest. The victors set fire to the wigwams and forts; the whole was soon in a blaze; many of the old men, the women, and the children, perished in the flames.

¹ pedem gradatim rettulerunt.

THE ORDER OF WORDS

IN THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

1. **Normal Order.** A word receives most emphasis when placed at the beginning or end of a sentence, therefore in an ordinary Latin sentence place the Subject first and the Predicate last.

N.B.—By the Predicate we do not mean necessarily the *Verb*. When the verb *esse* is used with Adjectives or Participles it need not take the last place.

2. The middle of a single sentence must be arranged on this principle: Expressions which naturally qualify the subject (generally adjectives or adjectival expressions) must be grouped near the subject, expressions which qualify the predicate (objects, adverbial and prepositional expressions) must be grouped before the verb.

3. Before the subject, however, will naturally come any words which connect with the preceding sentence; *e.g.* relatives, expressions of time, &c. It is exceedingly important to remember that Latin sentences do not usually follow one another without *some* expressed connection. In English we constantly leave the connection to be understood from the general sense.

Thus a Latin simple sentence, in which there is no need

to emphasise particular words, will usually be arranged in this order :

- (1) Connecting words.
- (2) Subject.
- (3) Attributes of Subject.
- (4) Objects and attributes of the Objects.
- (5) Adverbial expressions qualifying Predicate.
- (6) Predicate.

Postero die mane | ¹ Servilius consul cum omnibus copiis |
flumen quam celerrime transit.

*Early next day the consul Servilius with all his forces crosses
the river as speedily as possible.*

Quibus rebus auditis | dux hostium, vir magna belli peritia
| suos ex castello se recipere jubet.

*When he heard this news the leader of the enemy, who had
gained experience in many wars, ordered his men to leave
the fort.*

4. Special Emphasis. To emphasise any special word it must be placed out of its usual position. The Predicate is most emphasised by being placed first, the Subject by being placed last or nearly last. Any other word will be emphasised by taking either of these positions. An attribute separated from its noun, or an adverb separated from its verb, is thereby emphasised.

Habet senectus magnam auctoritatem.

Old age certainly has great influence.

Hac clade perit libertas.

It was liberty that perished in this disaster.

¹ The above sentences are divided by lines into (1) Connecting words, (2) those parts which naturally go with the subject, (3) those that go with the predicate. The connection in thought between two sentences is most frequently one of time or place; e.g. *postero die* in the first sentence.

Recte igitur deos esse diximus.

We were right in saying that there are gods.

Exempla proponamus illi **optima**.

Let the examples we set before him be the best.

In English also we can sometimes emphasise by order; e.g. "A friend I am unwilling to accuse." But we more often put the emphatic words in a clause by themselves, as in the last three examples given above. Compare "It is not often that a rich man envies the poor" with the Latin "*Haud saepe* invidet pauperibus dives," where the necessary emphasis on "not often" is given by position.

5. **Attributes, &c.** An adjective more often follows than precedes its noun, and a slight emphasis is often given by placing it first.

e.g. Vir bonus ac sapiens.

A good and wise man.

Bonum ac sapientem virum fingimus.

It is the good and wise man that we are describing.

Nouns in apposition generally follow the noun to which they are attached. If they precede it they are thereby emphasised.

e.g. Lemnos insula = the island of Lemnos.

Insula Lemnos = the *island* Lemnos (as opposed to the *town*).

Servilius consul = the consul Servilius.

Consul Servilius = Servilius *when consul*, or *as consul*.

Where there is both an attribute and some defining phrase (a case or a prepositional phrase) put the latter between the attribute and the noun.

e.g. Multa tua erga me beneficia.

Your many kindnesses to me.

Filius patri similis.

A son like his father.

THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

6. The Compound Sentence consists of a Principal Clause and Subordinate Clauses. The Subordinate Clauses all stand in some relation to the principal verb or its subject, being equivalent to nouns, adjectives, or adverbs; and they will for the most part fall into the places that these would have occupied if the sentence had been simple. Compare, for instance, the following sentences :

SIMPLE.

Quibus rebus auditis,
Iberorum dux,
vir magna belli peritia,
collectis omnibus copiis,
impediendi causa Romanos,
pontem
rescindit.

Hearing this, the Iberian leader, a man of great experience in warfare, collected all his forces, and broke down the bridge in order to delay the Romans.

COMPOUND.

Quae quum audiisset,
Iberorum dux,
qui bellorum peritissimus erat
quum omnes copias collegisset,
ne Romani celerius advenirent,
pontem rescindi
jubet.

When the Iberian leader, who had had great experience in warfare, heard this, he collected all his forces, and ordered the bridge to be broken down, so as to delay the Romans' advance.

The main principle therefore of the Compound Sentence is that the subordinate parts of the sentence are **enclosed** between the subject, which must stand near the beginning, and the principal verb, which will most frequently come at the end. The order of clauses will therefore naturally be as follows :

- (1) Any clause which connects with the previous sentence.
- (2) The subject followed by any attributive clauses which belong to it.

- (3) Any clauses which naturally belong to the Predicate—
 (a) Adverbial clauses of *time*, &c. ; (b) Object clauses, such as Acc. and Inf., Indirect Questions or Commands.

- (4) The Predicate.

Quod cum vidisset dux, quia quid hostis paret nescit, paullum moratur.

Seeing this, the general delayed a little time, because he did not know what the enemy was preparing to do.

Reliquis diebus Caesar, ne qui inermibus militibus impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem conlocabat.

During the remaining days Caesar piled up facing the enemy all the timber that had been cut, so that no attack might be made on his men when unarmed.

Tamen Senones, quae est civitas imprimis firma et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eos regem constituerat, interficere publico consilio conati, cum ille praesensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecuti regno domoque expulerunt.

Nevertheless the Senones, who are the strongest and most influential tribe among the Gauls, tried to kill Cavarinus, whom Caesar had made king among them, and when he found out the plot and fled, pursued him as far as their boundaries, and drove him from his kingdom and home.

But these principles will be modified by many considerations of (a) Emphasis, (b) Logical Arrangement, (c) Sound. No system of rules can take the place of observation in reading, but the following suggestions may be added.

(a) **Emphasis.** As in the Simple Sentence, the beginning and end are emphatic positions, and a subordinate clause may be emphasised by being placed in one of these positions. It often happens that the verb which is grammatically the

principal verb is not the important part of the predicate, and in that case it will not come last. This is especially frequent with the verb of "saying" that introduces *Oratio Obliqua*, which is not as a rule kept to the end of the sentence.

e.g. Eo cum de improvise celeriusque omni opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos miserunt qui dicerent se suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittere.

But Caesar arriving there suddenly and sooner than anyone had expected, the Remi, who are the nearest to Gaul of the Belgian tribes, sent him ambassadors to say that they surrendered themselves and all they possessed to the sway and authority of the Roman people.

In this sentence *miserunt* is the principal verb, and *dicerent* the main verb of the subordinate clause, but neither contains the main statement of the sentence, and therefore neither stands last. The object of the sentence is to give the message of the Remi "se . . . permittere." It is a common mistake of beginners to think they must write "legatos qui se . . . permittere dicerent miserunt."

For the same reason a Purpose Clause or Causal Clause will stand last, if to state the Purpose or Cause is the real object of the sentence; *i.e.* if it is more emphatic than the statement of the Principal Verb. Compare the following:

He said it to frighten me.

Haec dixit ut me terreret.

He threatened me with torture to frighten me.

Ut me terreret cruciatum mihi minabatur.

In the first sentence to state the purpose is the object of the sentence. In the second the principal verb contains the main idea.

(*b*) **Logical** arrangement. It is generally essential to clearness that the statement of *circumstances* (*e.g.* time, place, etc.)

should precede the main statement, and statement of *cause* precede the statement of the effect. For this reason a Consecutive sentence will almost always come after the verb it depends on, though grammatically subordinate.

It also tends to clearness to observe the following :

- (1) When the principal verb and subordinate verb have the same subject, do not put the subject, as we do in English, inside the subordinate clause ; *e.g.* for "When Caesar heard this, he returned," say, "Caesar, quum haec audiisset, rediit."
- (2) In translating complicated English sentences into Latin avoid the frequent change of subject which we allow in English. The change of Active for Passive will often obviate difficulty.

(c) **Sound.** If we followed universally the rule of *enclosing* subordinate clauses, we should find three or four verbs sometimes together at the end of the sentence. Avoid this by altering the arrangement of words in one or more of the clauses.

Avoid generally placing together similar terminations (especially *-orum*, *-arum*). Avoid also a sentence consisting entirely of words of the same length ; *e.g.* such a combination as 'Erat quondam pastor quidam Gygis regis.'

The sound often helps the sense ; *e.g.* where the writer wishes to describe a series of events rapidly following one another he may use a series of short sentences, even without conjunctions.

e.g. Concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solo ea quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius, Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit ; reperit esse vera.

On dismissing the council he detained Liscus and enquired of him privately about those matters that he had mentioned at the meeting. Liscus spoke then more openly and boldly, and by private enquiries from others Caesar found that his statements were true.

7. Pronouns.

(a) The Relative always comes first in its clause where possible.

e.g. These towns, one of which has been burnt.

Haec oppida, quorum unum incensum est (*never unum quorum*).

Catiline is here, by whose slaves he was killed.

Adest Catilina cujus ab servis interfectus est (not ab cujus servis).

So quamobrem, qua de causa, quas inter urbes, &c.

But if the relative is used substantivally, the preposition will precede it as a rule—inter quos, ex quibus, &c.

(b) Many adjectives (especially superlatives) and words in apposition are attracted into the Relative clause in Latin contrary to English usage.

e.g. The beautiful city of Corinth, which was destroyed by L. Mummius.

Corinthus quae urbs pulcherrima ab L. Mummiio diruta est.

(c) Observe that cases of se, suus, ipse, quisque in the same sentence generally stand next one another.

e.g. Suae quisque fortunae faber.

Each man is the maker of his own fortune.

Sceleris sui sibi conscius.

Conscious of his guilt.

SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

N.B.—In these Vocabularies the principal parts of Irregular Verbs are given where they first occur, but are not as a rule repeated afterwards. Verbs of the First Conjugation are distinguished from verbs of the Third by the mark I. Where the construction is not given verbs govern the accusative.

Exercise 2.

go, eo, ire, ivi, itum.
 city, urbs, urbis, *f*.
 buy, ēmo, emēre, ēmi, emptum.
 bread, pānis, -is, *m*.
 see, vīdeo, -ēre, vīdi, vīsum.
 home, dōmus, -us, *f*.
 friend, amīcus, -i.
 ask for, rōgo, I.
 peace, pax, pācis, *f*.
 send, mitto, mittēre, misi, missum.
 run, curro, -ēre, cūcurri, cursum.
 fast, quick, cēler; *adv.* cēlērīter.
 catch, take, capture, cāpio, -ēre, cēpi, captum.
 horse, ēquus, -i, *m*.
 tired, weary, fessus, dēfessus.
 sword, glādius, -i, *m*.
 kill, put to death, interficio, -ēre, -fēcī, -fectum; occido, -ēre, occīdī, occisum.
 give, do, dāre, dēdi, dātum.
 king, rex, rēgis.
 son, filius, -i.

Exercise 3.

retreat, se rēcīpēre, -cēpi, -ceptum;
 pēdem rēferre, rettuli or rētuli, relatum.
 avoid, vīto, I.
 battle, pugna, proelium.
 hinder, impēdio, 4.

march, *n.* īter, ītinēris, *n.*
 march, *v.* īter fācio; contendo, -ēre, -dī, -tum.
 learn (= discover), cognosco, -ēre, -nōvi, -nītum.
 plan, consīlium, *n.*
 advance, prō-grēdior, -i, -gressus, prōcedo, -ēre, -cessi, -cessum (so conjugate cēdo and all its compounds).
 camp, castra, -orum, *n. pl.*
 accuse, accūso, I.
 work, *v.* lābōro, I.
 work, *n.* lābor, -ōris, *m.*; ōpus, -eris, *n.*
 become, fio, fīeri, factus sum.
 rich, dīves, -itis.
 arms, arma, *n. pl.*
 think, pūto, I.
 coward, ignāvus.
 brave, strong, fortis, vālidus.
 poor (a poor man), pauper, -eris.
 consul, consul, -ūlis.
 ought, dēbeo.
 praise, laudo, I.

Exercise 4.

help, jūvo, -are, jūvi, jūtum, *acc.*; subvēnio, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, *dat.*
 sick, aeger, -ra, -rum.
 suffer, pātior, -i, passus.
 pain, dōlor, -ōris, *m*
 plain, campus, -i, *m*.

Exercise 5.

safe, tūtus.
 stay, remain, māneo, -ēre, mansi,
 mansum.
 save, servo, I.
 whole, tōtus, omnis.

Exercise 6.

so great, tantus.
 such, tālis.
 so many, tot (an *indecl. adj.*).
 so often, tōties.
 so (with *adv.* and *adj.*), tam.
 so (= in such a way), ita.
 so (= to such an extent), ādeo.

conquer, defeat, vinco, -ēre, vīci,
 victum.

be afraid, fear, tīmeo.
 our men, nostri [omit *men*].
 escape, effūgio, -ēre, fūgi.
 fierce, fērox; *adv.* fērōciter.
 danger, pēricūlum.
 ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*
 deep, high, altus.
 river, flūmen, -inis, *n.*; flūvius, -i, *m.*
 cross, transeo, -ire, -ii, -itum.
 despise, despicio, -ēre, -spexi,
 -spectum.
 fear, mētus, -ūs, *m.*; tīmor, -ōris, *m.*
 dare, audeo, -ēre, ausus.
 storm, tempestas, -tātis, *f.*
 arise, co-ōrior, -iri, -ortus.

Exercise 7.

enough, sātis.
 snow, nix, nivis, *f.*
 set out, prōficiscor, -i, profectus.
 easily, fācile.
 tree, arbor, -ōris, *f.*
 fall, cādo, -ēre, cēcīdi, cāsum.

lie, jāceo, -ēre, jācui.
 return, rēdeo, -ire, -ii, -itum.
 courage, virtus, -tūtis, *f.*
 climb, ascendo, -ēre, -di, -sum.
 follow, sēquor, -i, secūtus.

Exercise 8.

arrive, advēnio, -ire, -vēni, -ven-
 tum.
 full, plēnus.
 sea, māre, -is, *n.*
 book, liber, -ri, *m.*
 fly, fūgio, -ēre, fūgi, fūgitum.
 again, rursus.
 idle, cowardly, ignāvus.

Exercise 9.

leave, relinquo, -ēre, -līqui, -lictum.
 home, homewards, *acc.* of dōmus,
 -ūs, *f.*

Exercise 10.

defend, dēfendo, -ēre, -fendi,
 -fensum.
 walls, mūri, *m.*; moenia, *n. pl.*
 alone, sōlus.
 law, lex, lēgis, *f.*
 speak, lōquor, -i, lōcūtus.
 die, mōrior, -i, mortuus.
 hunger, fāmes, -is, *f.*
 hurt, laedo, -ēre, laesi, laesum.

Exercise 11.

citizen, cīvis, -is.
 messenger, nuntius, -i.
 go away, abeo (like *eo*).
 cold, frīgus, -ōris, *n.*
 seem, vīdeor, -ēri, vīsus.
 ditch, trench, fossa.
 soldier, miles, -itis.

Exercise 12.

weapon, *tēlum*.
 throw, *jācio*, -ēre, *jēci*, *jactum*.
 place, *lōcus*, -i, *m*.
 shield, *scūtum*.
 repel, *rēpello*, -ēre, *reppūli*, *rēpulsum*.
 call, *appello*, I.

Exercise 13.

few, *pauci*.
 bear, *fēro*, *ferre*, *tūli*, *lātum*.

Exercise 14.

mule, *mūlus*, -i, *m*.
 lead, *dūco*, -ēre, *duxi*, *ductum*.
 laden, *ōnēratus*.
 gold, *aurum*.
 long (*of time*), *diu*; longer, *diūtius*.
 burden, *ōnus*, -ēris, *n*.
 compel, *cōgo*, -ēre, *coēgi*, *coactum*.
 carry, *porto*, I.
 by chance, *cāsu*, *forte*.
 follow, *sēquor*, -i; *sēcūtus*.
 admire, *mīror*, I.
 kindness, *bēnēficentia*, *hūmānitas*, -tātis, *f*.
 try, *cōnor*, I. followed by *Inf*.

Exercise 15.

hardly, *vix*.
 reinforcements, *supplēmentum*, *nōvae cōpiae*.
 resolve, *constituo*, -ēre, -ui, -ūtum.
 resist, *rēsisto*, -ēre, -stīti, *dat*.
 attack (onset, charge), *impētus*, -ūs, *m*.
 almost, *paene*, *prōpe*.
 at length, *tandem*.
 joy, *gaudium*, *laetitia*.

temple, *templum*, *aedes*, *f*. [*sing.* only].

gift, *dōnum*.
 go, *se conferre*.
 god, *deus*, *dei*.

Exercise 16.

hill, *collis*, -is, *m*.
 throw away, *abjicio*, -ēre, -jēci, -jēctum.
 some...others, *ālii...ālii*.
 exhausted, *confectus* *lābōre*.
 hide, *cēlo*, I.

Exercise 17.

hostage, *obses*, -īdis, *c*.
 near, *prōpe*, *acc*.
 army, *exercitus*, -ūs, *m*.
 night, *nox*, *noctis*, *f*.

Exercise 18.

banish, *expello*, -ēre, -pūli, -pulsum.
 bring, *affēro*, *afferre*, *attūli*, *allatum* (of persons), *adduco*.
 take away, *aufēro*, *aufferre*, *abstūli*, *ablātum*.
 money, *pēcūnia*.
 friendship, *āmicitia*.
 sell, *vendo*, *vendēre*, *vendīdi*, *venditum*.
 buy, *ēmo*.
 silver, *argentum*.

Exercise 19.

Greek, *Graecus*.
 general, *dux*, *dūcis*; *impērātor*, -oris.
 betray, *prōdo*, -ēre, -dīdi, -dītum.
 present, *dōnum*.
 tempt, *tempto*, I.

receive, *accipio*, -ēre, -cēpi, -ceptum.

reward, *praemium*.

upright, *prōbus*.

send back, *reddo* (like *prodo*).

punish, *pūnio*.

Exercise 20.

Words which take prolate Infinitive.

be able, *possum*, *posse*, *pōtui*.

ought, *dēbeo*.

be accustomed, *sōleo*, *sōlere*, *sōlitus*.

dare, *audeo*, *audēre*, *ausus*.

wish, am willing, *vōlo*, *velle*, *vōlui*.

not to wish, be unwilling, *nōlo*, *nolle*, *nōlui*.

prefer, *mālo*, *malle*, *mālui*.

desire, *cūpio*, *cūpere*, -*ivi*, -*itum*.

determine, *stātuo*, *constituo*.

begin, *incipio*; *coepi*, -*isse*.

cease, *desīno*, *desinere* [for perfect use *destiti*].

try, *cōnor*, *I*.

teach, *dōceo*, -*ēre*, *dōcui*, *doctum*.

learn, *disco*, *discere*, *dīdici*.

compel, force, *cōgo*.

allow, *sīno*, -*ere*, *sīvi*, *sītum*.

seem, *vīdeor*.

Also passives of all verbs of saying, thinking, take prolate Infinitives.

hope, *spēro*, *I*.

believe, *crēdo*, -*ēre*, -*dīdi*, -*dītum*.

command, *impēro*, *I*., *dat*.

obey, *pāreo*, *dat*.

country (= native land), *patria*.

for, on behalf of, *pro*, *abl*.

true, *vērus*.

pitch a camp, *castra pōno*, -*ēre*, *pōsui*, *pōsitum*; or *castra mūnio*.

lie, *mentior*, -*iri*, *mentitus*.

go to the help of, *subvēnio*, *dat*.

Exercise 21.

punish, *pūnio*; *poenā afficio*, -*ēre*, -*fēcī*, -*fectum*.

benefit, *prōsum*, *prōdesse*, *prōfui*, *dat*.

barbarians, *barbāri*.

pleasant, *jūcundus*.

disgraceful, *turpis*.

foolish, *stultus*.

wise, *sāpiens*, -*entis*.

Exercise 22.

complain, *quēror*, -*i*, *questus*.

useless, *inūtilis*.

of (= concerning), *de*, *abl*.

rule, *rēgo*, *regno*, *I*.

difficult, hard, *difficilis*.

man (as opposed to boy or woman), *vir*.

Exercise 23.

persuade, *persuādeo*, -*ēre*, *suasi*, -*suasum*, *dat*.

master (of pupils), *māgister*, -*tri*; (of slaves), *dōmīnus*, -*i*.

often, *saepe*.

useful, *ūtilis*.

against one's will, unwilling, *invitus*, *adj*.

Exercise 24.

army, *exercitus*, -*ūs*, *m*.

give up, surrender, *trādo*, -*ēre*, -*dīdi*, -*dītum*.

summon, call, *arcesso*, -*ēre*, *arcessivi*, *arcessitum*; *convōco*, *I*.

collect, *colligo*, -*ēre*, -*lēgi*, -*lectum*.

Exercise 25.

state, *civitas*, -*tātis*, *f.*
 drive out, expel, *expello*.
 elect, *creo*, *I.*
 demand, *posco*, -*ere*, *pōposci*;
impēro, *I.*
 bring (of persons), *dūco*; (of things),
fēro.
 chief, *princeps*, -*ipis*.
 seize, *rāpio*, -*ere*, *rāpui*, *raptum*.
 set on fire, *ūro*, -*ere*, *ussi*, *ustum*;
incendo, -*ere*, -*di*, -*sum*.
 set free, *libēro*, *I.*

Exercise 26.

stumble, *lābor*, -*i*, *lapsus*.
 fall down, *collābor*.
 attack, *aggredior*, -*i*, -*gressus*;
adorior, -*iri*, -*ortus*; (of a city,
 camp, etc.), *oppugno*, *I.*
 advance, *prōgredior*.
 enter, march in, *ingredior*.
 return, *regredior*, *rēdeo* (like *eo*).
 go out, *egredior*; *exeo* (like *eo*).
 be afraid, *vēreor*.
 die, *mōrior*, -*i*, *mortuus*, *Fut. Part.*
moriturus.
 delay, *mōror*, *I.*
 exhort, *hortor*, *I.*
 gate, *porta*.
 halt, *consisto*, -*ere*, -*stifi*.
 mile, *mille passūs*; two miles, *duo*
milia passuum.
 reach, *pervenio ad*.
 take by storm, *expugno*, *I.*

Exercise 27.

open, *āpērio*, -*ire*, *aperui*, *apertum*.
 call to, *appello*, *I.*
 approach, *appropinquo*, *I.*
 winter, *hiēms*, *hiēmis*, *f.*

winter beginning, *ineunte hiēme*.
 at my house, *āpud me*.
 sleep, *dormio*.
 early, *māne* [*lit.* in the morning].
 bring an answer, *responsum rēfēro*.
 call for, *appello*, *I.*

Exercise 28.

wood, *silva*.
 small, *parvus*.
 youth, *jūvēnis*.
 rampart, *vallum*.
 fortify, *mūnio*.
 resist, *rēsisto*, -*ere*, -*stiti*, *dat.*;
sustīneo, -*ere*, -*tinui*, *tentum*,
acc.

Exercise 29.

silence, *silentium*.
 lead out, *ēdūco*.
 town, *oppidum*.

Exercise 30.

gladly, *libenter*.
 save, *conservo*, *I.*
 foot, *pēs*, *pēdis*, *m.*
 at the king's feet, *ad pēdes rēgis*.
 found (a city), *condo*, -*ere*, -*dīdi*,
-dītum. From the foundation of
 Rome, *ab urbe condita*.
 spring, *vēr*, -*is*, *n.*
 bury, *sēpēlio*, -*ire*, -*ii*, or *ivi*,
sēpultum.

Exercise 31.

some, *nonnulli*.
 lead back, *rēdūco*.
 pursue, *sēquor*.

Exercise 32.

at a distance, *prōcul*.
 await, *exspecto*, *I.*

Exercise 33.

eat, *ēdo*, -*ēre*, *ēdi*, *ēsum*.
 keep, *servo*, *I*.
 wounded, *saucius*, *vulneratus*.
 only, *solum*, *modo*; *tantum*.
 give up, *dēdo*, -*ēre*, -*dīdi*, *dītum*.
 soon, *mox*, *brēvi* (*sc.* tempore).
 take away, *aufēro*. (See 18.)
 from (out of), *ex*; (away from), *ab*;
 (down from), *de*.

Exercise 34.

break down (*trans.*), *rescindo*, -*ēre*,
 -*scīdi*, -*scissum*.
 bridge, *pons*, -*tis*, *m.*
 arrival, *adventus*, -*ūs*, *m.*
 immediately, *stātīm*, *extemplo*.
 therefore, *itāque* (first word),
īgītur (second word).
 come down, *descendo*, -*ēre*, -*di*,
 -*sum*.
 seek, *pēto*, -*ēre*, -*ivi*, -*itum*.
 corn, *frumentum*.
 repair, *rēficio*.

Exercise 35.

scout, *explōrator*, *spēcūlator*.
 slowly, *grādātīm*, *lente*.
 tell (= announce), *rēfēro*, *nuntio*, *I*.
 to the other side of, across, *trans*.
 provisions, *commeātus*, -*ūs*, *m.*;
 food, *cibus*, -*i*, *m.*
 strong, *firmus*, *vālidus*.

Exercise 36.

country (as opposed to town), *rus*,
rūris, *n.*
 Athens, *Athēnae*, *f. pl.*
 Syracuse, *Syrācūsae*, *f. pl.*
 Carthage, *Carthāgo*, -*inis*, *f.*

summer, *aestas*, -*tātis*, *f.*
 next, *proximus*.
 month, *mensis*, -*is*, *m.*

Exercise 37.

long, *longus*.
 Sicily, *Sicīlia*.
 Greece, *Graecia*.
 new, *nōvus*.
 Corinth, *Cōrinthus*, -*i*, *f.*

Exercise 38.

severe, *grāvis*.
 within, *intrā*, *acc.*
 help, *auxilium*.
 delay, *cunctor*, *I.*; *mōror*, *I*.
 sail, *nāvigo*, *I*.
 set sail, *nāvem solvo*, -*ēre*, *solvi*,
sōlūtum.
 perish, *pereo*, -*ire*, -*ii*, -*itum*.
 farm, *fundus*, -*i*, *m.*
 wage war, *bellum gēro*, -*ēre*, *gessi*,
gestum.
 harbour, *portus*, -*ūs*, *m.*
 Florence, *Flōrentia*.
 dawn, *prīma lux*.

Exercise 39.

beautiful, *pulcher*, -*ra*, -*rum*.
 sunset, *sōlis occāsus*, -*us*, *m.*
 companion, *cōmes*, -*itis*.
 on the following day, *postēro die*,
postrīdie.
 about, *adv.*, *circiter*.
 evening, *vesper*, -*ēri*, *m.* (Locative
vesperi or *e*).
 be distant, *absum*.
 broad, *lātus*.
 deep, *altus*.
 from which, whence, *undē*.

Exercise 40.

road, *via*.
 for a short time, *paulisper*.
 shore, *ōra*, *litus*, -*ōris*, *n*.
 every day, *quōtidie*.
 beginning, *inīitium*.

Exercise 41.

shout, *clāmor*.
 by day, *interdiu*.
 song, *cantus*, -*ūs*, *m*.
 explore, *explōro*, *I*.
 yard, *passus*, -*ūs*, *m*.
 come between, *intercēdo*, -*ēre*,
 -*cessi*, -*cessum*.
 accordingly, *igītur*, [second word].
 dark, *obscūrus*.
 boat, *linter*, -*tris*, *f*.
 get ready, equip, *pāro*, *I*.
 up the river, *adverso flūmīne*.
 without the knowledge of—use
*in*scius.

Exercise 42.

*The following words govern the
 ablative:*

get possession of, *pōtior*, *4*.
 enjoy, *fruor*, -*i*, *fruitus*.
 perform, *fungor*, -*i*, *functus*.
 use, *utor*, -*i*, *usus*.
 feed on, *vescō*, -*i*.
 lean on, *nitor*, -*i*, *nixus* (*nixus* in
 the sense of *striving*).
 relying on, *frētus*.
 contented with, *contentus*.
 endowed with, *praeditus*.
 worthy of, *dignus*.
 unworthy of, *indignus*.
 there is no need of, *opus est*.
 I have need of help, *opus est mihi*
auxilio.

booty, *praeda*.
 disease, *morbus*, -*i*, *m*.
 body, *corpus*, -*ōris*, *n*.
 weak, *infirmus*.
 lot, *sors*, -*tis*, *f*.
 duty, *offīcium*.
 undertake, *suscīpio*.
 difficulty, *difficultas*, -*tātis*, *f*.
 tall, *altus*.
 wing, *āla*.

Exercise 43.

like, *sīmilis*.
 build, *aedifīco*, *I*.
 height, *altitūdo*, -*inis*, *f*.
 on the march, *ex* or *in* *itīnēre*.
 beat, *caedo*, -*ēre*, *cēcīdi*, *caesum*.
 Babylon, *Babylon*, -*ōnis*, *f*.
 wise, *sāpiens*.
 wisdom, *sāpientia*.
 bow, *arcus*, -*ūs*, *m*.
 Rhone, *Rhōdānus*, -*i*, *m*.
 many times (with *comp.*), *multis*
partibus.

Exercise 44.

Verbs followed by Acc. and Inf.

think, *pūto*, *I*.; *existīmo*, *I*.; *arbitror*, *I*.; *reor*, *rēri*, *rātus*.
 believe, *crēdo*.
 be sure, *pro certo hābeo*.
 perceive, *sentio*, -*ire*, *sensi*, *sen-*
sum.
 understand, *intellēgo*, -*ēre*, -*lexi*,
 -*lectum*.
 notice, observe, *ānimadverto*, -*ēre*,
 -*verti*.
 learn, ascertain, *cognosco*, -*ēre*,
 -*nōvi*, -*nītum*.
 know, *scio*.
 not to know, *nescio*.

hear, **audio**.

say, **dīco**.

assert, declare, **affirmo, I.**

inform, tell, **certiorem fācio**. See p. 43, note 2.

announce, report, **nuntio, I., rēfero**.

relate, **narro, I.**

cry out, **clāmo, I.**

deny, say not, **nēgo, I.**

reply, **respondeo, -ēre, -spondi, -sponsum**.

pretend, **sīmūlo, I.**

men say, it is said, **fērunt**.

it is agreed, well known, **constat**.

promise, **prōmitto, polliceor**.

hope, **spēro, I.**

threaten, **mīnor, I.**

strike a camp, **castra mōveo**.

ready, **pārātus**.

Exercise 45.

be at hand, **adsum**.

yield, **cēdo, -ēre, cessi, cessum**.

disaster, **clādes, -is, f.**

sustain (= receive), **accīpio**.

a Gaul, **Gallus**.

Gaul, **Gallia**.

Exercise 47.

deceive, **dēcīpio, fallo, -ēre, fēfelli, falsum**.

arrival, **adventus, -ūs, m.**

Exercise 48.

state, **civītas, -tātis, f.**

attack, charge, **impētus**.

charge, **impētum fācio**.

finish, **conficio**.

leader, **dux, dūcis**.

Exercise 49.

as soon as possible, **quam primum**.

traitor, **prōdītor, -ōris, m.**

rightly, **jūrē**.

prisoner, **captīvus, -i**.

legion, **lēgio, -onis, f.**

Exercise 50.

come up, arrive, **advēnio**.

reward, **praemium**.

surround, **cingo, -ēre, cinxi, cinctum; circumvēnio**.

ago. See p. 32.

Exercise 51.

old man, **sēnex, sēnis**.

complain, **quēror, -i, questus**.

wife, **uxor, -ōris**.

field, **āger, -ri, m.**

sit, **sēdeo, -ēre, sēdi, sessum**.

supper, **cēna**.

be hungry, **ēsūrio, 4**.

Exercise 52.

run out, **prōcurro**. *Perf.* -curri or -cucurri.

pass, **saļtus, -ūs, m.**; angustiae, *f. pl.*

purposely, **de industriā**.

abandon, **rēlinquo**.

(guilty, **nōcens, -entis**.

at the same time, **sīmul**.

kingdom, **regnum**.

forum, **fōrum**.

Exercise 53.

besiege, beset, blockade, **obsīdeo, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum**

fail, **deficio**.

Ex 53.—*contd.*

greatly, magnōpĕre.

order, jussum.

territories, fines, -ium, *m.* [*finis, in singular = boundary*].

nevertheless, tāmen [usually not first word].

withdraw, discēdo.

Exercise 54.

engage in battle, join battle, proelium committo.

dismiss, disband, dimitto.

draw up in line of battle, instruo -ĕre, -struxi, -structum.

withstand, sustineo.

line of battle, ācies, *f.*, 5.

escape, *n.*, fūga.

all to a man, omnes ad unum.

Exercise 55.

review an army, recenseo, -ĕre, -ui.

thick, densus.

cloud, nubes, -is, *f.*

any (in negative sentences), ullus.

mortal, mortālis.

by name [called], nōmīne.

appear, videor.

capital, cāput, -itis, *n.*

world, orbis terrarum.

practise, stūdeo.

art of war, ars militāris.

speak the truth, vĕra lōquor.

Exercise 56.

clever, callidus.

offence, noxa, delictum.

give evidence, testimōnium dīco.

accuser, accūsātor.

anger, ira.

make angry, lācesso, -ere, -ivi, -itum.

swear, jūro, I.

Exercise 57.

value, think worth, aestīmo, I.

liberty, libertas.

cheap, worthless, vilis.

at a low price, vīli.

at a high price, highly, magni.

of no value, nihīli.

cost, stare (*dat. of person*).

sesterce, sestertius, -i, *m.*

care a straw for, flocci facio.

slave, servus, -i.

talent, tālentum.

virtue, virtūs, -tutis, *f.*

Exercise 59.

waste time, tempus tĕro, -ĕre, -trīvi, trītum.

confidence, fidūcia.

too much, nimis, *adv.*; nimius, *adj.*

too little, very little, pārū, *adv.*

boldness, audācia.

loss, dētrīmentum.

surrender (*intrans.*), se trādere,

dēdere; in dēditionem vĕnire.

strength, rōbur, -ōris, *n.*

still, adhuc.

keep, conservo, I.

old (of former times), antīquus.

(living or lasting long), vĕtus, -ĕris.

most, plĕrique.

show (of qualities), praesto, -stare, -stīti.

where in the world, ūbi gentium.

live (= dwell), hābito, I.

Exercise 60.

eloquence, *ēlōquentia*.
 nation, *gens, gentis, f.*
 lose, *āmitto*.
 hope, *spes, f., 5.*
 country (native land), *patria*.
 (district), *rēgio, fines*.
 (land), *terra*.
 (opp. to *town*), *rus*.
 send to help, *submitto, acc. and dat.*;
e.g. copias Caesari submittit.

Exercise 61.

The following couples of verbs, one governing *Dat.* and the other *Acc.*, are especially to be noted:

help, support, *succurro, -ēre, -curri, -cursum (dat.), subvenio (dat.), jūvo (acc.)*.
 please, *plāceo (dat.), jūvo (acc.)*.
 advise, *suādeo, suāsi, suāsum (dat.), mōneo (acc.)*.
 command, *impēro (dat.), jūbeo (acc.)*.
 hurt, harm, *nōceo (dat.), laedo, -ēre, laesi, laesum (acc.)*.
 heal, *mēdeor (dat.), sāno, I. (acc.)*.
 marry (woman as subject), *nūbo, -ēre, nupsi, nuptum (dat.)*.
 (man as subject), *dūco (acc.)*.

The following govern the *Dative*:

believe, trust, *credo*.
 obey, *pāreo*.
 spare, *parco, -ēre, pēperci, parsum*.
 pardon, *ignosco, -ēre, -nōvi, -nōtum*.
 envy, *invideo*.
 to be angry with, *īrascor, iratus*.
 restrain, *tempēro, I.*
 to be devoted to, *stūdeo*.
 favour, *fāveo, fāvi, fāutum*.

Also all compounds of *sum*—

adesse, to be present at.
interesse, to take part in.
praeesse, to be in command of.
desse, to fail, to be wanting to.
superesse, to survive.
prōdesse (prosum), to be advantageous, of service to.

And a large number of verbs compounded with *preps.* and *bene*, *male*, *satis*, *re*:

satisfy, *sātisfacio*.
 put in command of, *praeficio (acc. and dat.)*; *e.g. Labienum legioni praefecit*.
 entrust, *committo, acc. and dat.*
~~wage~~ war on, *infēro bellum*.
 declare war against, *bellum indīco*.
 to press hard upon, *insto, institi*.
 prefer, *antēpōno (acc. and dat.)*;
e.g. anteponit rus urbi.
 throw in the way of, *objicio (acc. and dat.)*.
 threaten, *minor, I.*; *e.g. mortem mihi minatur*.
 hold out against, resist, *rēsisto*.

wealth, riches, *divitiae*.
 cause, *causa*.
 disease, *morbus, -i, m.*
 meet, *obviam eo, dat.*
 enemy (public), *hostis*.
 (private), *inimicus*.

Exercise 62.

French, *Galli*.
 legion, *lēgio*.
 countrymen (=fellow-countrymen, fellow-citizens), *cives*.
 judge, *jūdex, -icis*.

Ex. 62—contd.

torture, **crūciatus**, -ūs, *m.*
 exact from, **impero**, *acc.* and *dat.* ;
e.g. **naves sociis imperat.**
 slavery, **servitus**, -tūtis, *f.*
 agriculture, **agricultūra**.

Exercise 63.

advice, **consilium**.
 safety, **sālus**, -ūtis, *f.*
 in the hands of, in **pōtestate**.
 Persians, **Persae**.
 Athenians, **Athēnienses**.
 the others, the rest, **cēteri**, **rēliqūi**.
 trust, **confido**, -ēre, **confisus sum**,
dat.

Exercise 64.

form a plan, **consilium cāpio** or *ineo*.
 secretly, **clam**, *adv.*
 rout, **fundo**, -ēre, **fūdi**, **fūsum**.

Exercise 65.

fight a battle, **proelium facio**.
 suddenly, **sūbito**.
 take to flight, **terga verto**, -ēre,
verti **versum**.
 drive down, **dēpello**.

Exercise 66.

robber, **latro**, -ōnis.
 strong (of positions, etc.), **firmus**.
 approach, **ādītus**, -ūs, *m.*
 block, **obsideo**, -ēre, **sēdi**, -sessum.
 cut down, **succīdo**, -ēre, -cīdi,
 -cīsum.
 storm, take by storm, **expugno**, *I.*

Exercise 67.

crop, **sēgēs**, -ētis, *f. f.*
 ripen, **mātūresco**.
 ripe, ready (early), **mātūrus**.

guide, **dux**.
 horseman, **ēques**, -ītis.
 take prisoner, **cāpio**, **captivum**
facio.
 on the march, **ex** } **itinēre**.
in }
 discover, find (find what one is
 looking for), **rēpērio**, -īre, **rep-**
peri, **repertum**.
 (find by chance), **invenio**.
 (find out, learn, of facts), **cog-**
nosco.

children, **libēri**.
 midnight, **mēdia nox**.
 German, **Germānus**.
 in safety, **incōlūmis**, *adj.*
 cattle, **pēcus**, -ōris, *n.*
 marsh, **pālūs**, -ūdis, *f.*

Exercise 68.

letter, **litterae**, *f. pl.*
 hold, occupy, **occūpo**, *I.*
 recall, **rēvōco**, *I.*
 order, **jussum**.
 cruel, **saevus**, **crūdēlis**.
 cruelty, **saevitia**, **crūdēlitas**.
 massacre, slaughter, **caedes**, -is, *f.*
 fleet, **classis**, -is, *f.*

Exercise 69.

England, **Britannia**.
 Englishman, **Britannus**.
 France, **Gallia**.
 Frenchman, **Gallus**.
 French (*adj.*), **Gallicus**.
 on account of, **ob**, **propter**.
 priest, **sācerdōs**, -dōtis.
 weapon, **tēlum**.
 iron (*adj.*), **ferreus**.
 club, **clāva**, **fustis**, -is, *m.*

by this means, *hoc mōdo*.
 shed, *effundo*, -ēre, *fūdi*, -*fūsum*.
 blood, *sanguis*, -*inis*, *m*.
 blow, *ictus*, -*ūs*, *m*.
 violence, *vīs*, *f*.

Exercise 70.

knight, *ēques*, -*itis*.
 wound, *vulnĕro*, *I*.
 charge, *impĕtum facio* in, *acc*.
 squadron, *āla*, *turma*.
 emperor, *imperātor*.
 open (a way, etc.), *pātĕfacio*.
 thereupon, *quo facto*.
 back, *tergum*.
 rise, *surgo*, -*ĕre*, *surrexi*, *sur-*
rectum.

Exercise 71.

almost, *paenĕ*, *fĕrĕ*.
 criminal, guilty, *nōcens*.
 majority, *mājor pars*.

Exercise 72.

lie, *mentior*.
 press hard, *prĕmo*, -*ĕre*, *pressi*,
pressum.
 I am hard pressed, *lābōro*, *I*.

Exercise 73.

arrow, *sāgitta*.
 archer, *sāgittārius*, -*i*.
 hold one's ground, in *lōco perstare*.

Exercise 74.

let slip, *dimitto*.
 opportunity, *occāsio*, -*ōnis*, *f*.
fācultas, -*tātis*, *f*.
 despise, *spĕrno*, -*ĕre*, *sprĕvi*,
sprĕtum.

Exercise 75.

ask, *rōgo*, *two accusatives*; *pĕto*
 (*ab* or *ex*).
 pray, beg, *oro*, *I*, *prĕcor*, *I*.
 demand, *flāgito*, *I*, *postūlo*, *I*,
posco, -*ĕre*, *pōposci*.
 urge, exhort, encourage, *hortor*, *I*,
admōneo.
 command, *impĕro*, *I*, *dat*.; *jūbeo*
 -*ĕre*, *jussi*, *jussum*, *acc*.
 decree, ordain, *ĕdico*.
 advise, *mōneo*, *acc*.; *suādeo*, *dat*.
 persuade, *persuādeo*, *dat*.
 forbid, *vĕto*, -*are*, -*ui*, -*itum*.

street, *via*.
 attempt (battle), *tempto*, *I*.
 friendship, *āmicitia*.
 baggage, *impĕdimenta*, *n. pl*.
 devote oneself to, *stūdeo*, *dat*.
 halt, consist, -*ĕre*, -*stiti*.
 vanguard, *primum agmen*.

Exercise 76.

bring help, *auxilium ferre*, *dat*.
 serious, severe, *grāvis*.
 people of town, *oppidāni*.

Exercise 77.

break down, *rescindo*, -*ĕre*, -*scīdi*,
 -*scissum*.
 Rhine, *Rhĕnus*, -*i*, *m*.
 cavalry, *ĕquites*, -*um*:
 infantry, *pĕdites*, -*um*.
 caution, carefulness, *diligentia*.
 off one's guard, *imprōvidus*, *in-*
cautus.
 send back, *rĕmitto*.
 determination, *constantia*.
 lay down, *dĕpōno*, -*ĕre*, -*pōsui*,
 -*pōsitum*.

Ex. 77—*cont'd.*

council, **concīlium**.
 thereupon, **deinde, quo facto**.
 assemble (*intr.*), **convēnio**.
 (*tr.*) **convōco, I**.
 prepare for battle, **arma expēdio**.

Exercise 78.

stand for, be a candidate for, **pēto**.
 consulship, **consulātus, -ūs, m**.
 to this side of, **citra, acc**.
 last, **ultīmus**.
 prayers, **prēces, f. pl**.
 plunder, **spōlio, I, dirīpio, -ēre, -ripui, -reptum**.
 induce, incite, **addūco**.
 treasure, **thēsaurus, -i, m**.
 dangerous, **pēricūlosus**.
 remain faithful to Caesar, **fidem Caesaris sēquor**.
 revolt from, **dēficio ab**.
 search for, **quaero, -ēre, quaesivi, quaesitum, pēto, -ēre, -ivi, -itum**.

Exercise 79.

on the other side of, **ultrā, acc**.
 Tiber, **Tibēris, -is, m**.
 cultivate, **colo, -ēre, cōlui, cultum**.
 senate, **sēnātus, -ūs; patres**.
 appoint, **creo, I, fācio**.
 bring (of things), **fēro**.
 (of persons), **dūco**,
 displease, **displīceo, dat**.
 dictator, **dictātor, -ōris**.
 toga, **tōga**.

Exercise 80.

hold, **tēneo, -ēre, -ui, -tum**.
 letter, **litterae, ēpistōla**.
 read, **lēgo, -ēre, lēgi, lectum**.

thank, **grāτίας āgo (-ēre, ēgi, actum), dat**.
 faithful, **fidēlis; adv. fidēliter**.
 put back, **rēpōno**.
 wake (*trans.*), **excito, I**.
 at first, **prīmo**.
 fortune, **fortūna**.

Exercise 81.

at (near), **ad**.
 guard, **custos, -ōdis**.
 commander, **praefectus, -i**.
 garrison, **praesīdium**.
 tear, **lacrīma**.
 assassinate, **trūcido, I**.
 at the same time, **sīmul**.
 beseech, **obsecro, I**.

Exercise 82.

younger, **nātū mīnor**.
 supply, **praebeo**.
 pay, **stipendium**.
 Spartan, **Lacedaemōnius**.
 ally, **sōcius**.
 famine, starvation, **fāmes, -is, f**.

Exercise 83.

forced march, **magnum iter**.
 with the intention of, **eo consīlio ut**.
 the former. . . the latter, **ille. . . hic**.
 take up position, **consīdo, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum**.
 mound, **tūmulus, -i, m**.
 long (of time), **diu; comp. diūtius**.
 within range, **intrā coniectum tēli**.
 shoot, **mitto**.
 fire back, return fire, **tela rējicio**.
 take to flight, **se fūgae mandare**.
 wait, **māneo, -ēre, mansi, mansum**.

Exercise 84.vainly, *frustrā*.behind, *pōnē, acc.*even, *ētiām* [vel used only with superlatives].not even, *ne...quīdem* [with emphatic word between].conceal, *cēlo, I.*pass (of time), *ago.***Exercise 85.***Datives of purpose or result of action.*to be a burden to, *ōnēri esse.*to sound a retreat, *rēceptui cānere, cēcīni, cantum.*to be (serve as) a signal, *signo esse.*to be a disgrace, to disgrace, *dēdēcori esse.*to be to the advantage of, to benefit, *ūsui esse.*to be the cause of, to cause, *causae esse.*to be an example, *exemplo esse.*to help, be a help to, *auxīlio, subsidiō esse.*to be a credit to, *laudi esse.*to be hateful to, hated by, *ōdio esse.*to be (mean) destruction to, *exitio esse.*to be a protection to, *praesidiō esse.*to be the salvation of, *sālūti esse.*to be a proof, *indicio esse.*constancy, *constantia.*negligence }
carelessness } *negligentia.*only, merely, *mōdo, solum, tantum.***Exercise 86.**avarice, *āvāritia.***Exercise 87.**banish, *expello.*free, *liber, -era, -erum.*(vb.) *libēro, I.*free from, devoid of, *vācuus.*far from, *prōcul.*son of, *nātus.*descended, *prognatus, ortus.*abound, *ābundo, I.*endowed, *praeditus.*full, *plēnus.*depart from, *discēdo, excēdo.*kingly power, *rēgia pōtestas, regnum.*exile, *exsul, -ulis.*prison, *carcer, -is, m.; vincula, n. pl.*captive, *captivus, -i*fault, blame, *culpa.*blame (vb.), *culpo, I.*praise, *laus, -dis, f.*willingly, *libenter.*fruit, *fructus, -ūs, m.*flower, *flos, flōris, m.*inhabit, *incōlo, -ere, -ui.*not only...but also, *non solum...**sed etiam.*race, people, gens, *-tis, f.***Exercise 88.**noble, *nōbilis.*children, *libēri.*desist from, *dēsisto, -ere, -stīti.*siege, *obsidiō, -ōnis, f.*goods, *bōna, n. pl.*angry, in a passion, *irātus.*

Exercise 89.

rightly, *jūrē*.
 wrongly, *injūriā*.
 in the fashion of, *mōre*.
 by your leave, *pāce tuā*.
 by force, *vi*; by force of arms, *vi et armis*.
 with all one's power, *summā vi, pro vīrili parte*.
 older, *nātu major*.
 younger, *nātu minor*.
 in a loud voice, *magnā vōce*.
 disorder, confusion, *tūmultus, -ūs, m.*
 arm, *armo, I.*
 fury, *fūror, -ōris, m.*
 excel, *sūpēro, I.*
 talents, *ingēnium*.
 inferior, *infērior*.
 numbers, *nūmērus, -i, m.* [only in *sing.*].
 ancestors, *mājōres*.

Exercise 90.

care, *cūra, diligentia*.
 skill, *ars, -tis, f.*
 superior, *sūpērior*.
 be superior, *praesto*.
 sorrow, *dōlor, -ōris, m.*
 characters (= letters), *littērae*.
 withdraw, go away, *ābeo, discēdo*.
 smile, *rīsus, -ūs, m.*
 (*vō.*) *subrīdeo, -ēre, -rīsi, -risum*.
 here, *hic*; (of motion), *huc*.
 act, ago, me *gēro*.

Exercise 91.

loss, *damnum*.
 decide the contest, *rem dēcerno, -ēre, -crēvi, -crētum*.

by name, called, *nōmine*.
 separate, *sējungo, -ēre, -junxi, -junctum*.
 turn round (*trans.*), *converto*.
 turning round (*intr.*), *conversus*.
 in turn, *singūli, adj.*, in *vīcem*.

Exercise 92.

mention above, *suprā commemoro, I.*
 golden, *aureus*.
 apple, *mālum*.
 garden, *hortus, -i, m.*
 nymph, *nympha*.
 remarkable, *mīrus, insignis, praeclārus*.
 beauty, *pulchrītūdo, -inis, f., forma*.
 distant, *longinquus*.
 surround, *cingo, -ēre, cinxi, cinctum*.
 on all sides, *ab omnibus partibus, undīque*.
 moreover, *praetēreā*.
 guard, *custōdio*.
 by day...by night, *interdiu...noctu*.

Exercise 93.

conspire, *conjūro, I.*
 conspiracy, *conjūrātio, ōnis, f.*
 delay, *mōra*.
 centre, *mēdia* or *intērior pars*.
 on his arrival, *adventu ejus*. [If *he* refers to the subject of sentence say *qui quum advenisset*.]
 the rest of, *rēliqui, cētēri, adj.*
 under arms, *armati, in armis*.
 join, *trans.*, *conjungo*; *intrans.*, *se conjungere cum*.
 invasion, *incursio, -onis, f.*
 borders, *fines, -ium, m.*

Exercise 94.

about, *de*, *prep.*
 watch, *vigīlia*.
 caution, *diligentia*.
 until late in the night, *usque ad multam noctem*.
 take up, *sūmo*, *-ēre*, *sumpsi*, *sumptum*.

Exercise 95.

Sicily, *Sicilia*.
 meanwhile, *intērea*, *intērim*.
 attack (of a disease), *afficio*, *-ēre*, *-fēci*, *-fectum*.
 carry off (=destroy), *dēleo*, *-ēre* *-ēvi*, *-ētum*; *conficio*.
 sustain, encourage, *confirmo*, *I*.
 attend to, *stūdeo*, *dat.*; *cūro*, *I.*, *acc.*
 in every way, *omni mōdo*.
 tent, *tābernāculum*.
 abandon a siege, raise a siege, *obsīdionem rēlinquo*, *obsīdione dēsisto*.
 feel, *sentio*, *-ire*, *sensi*, *sensum*.

Exercise 96.

husband, *vir*, *māritus*, *-i*.
 give up hope, *spem abjicio*.
 rush out, *effundor*, *-i*, *-fusus*.
 to meet, *obviam*, *dat.*
 win a victory, *victoriam rēporto*, *I.*, *rem prospere gero*.
 temple, *tempium*.
 great quantity of, *multus*.

Exercise 97.

scarcely, *vix*.
 sow, *sēro*, *-ēre*, *sēvi*, *sātum*.
 autumn, *auctumnus*, *-i*, *m.*

gather, *colligo*, *-ēre*, *-lēgi*, *-lectum*.
 harvest, *mēssis*, *-is*, *f.*
 undertake, *suscipio*.
 check, *cōhibeo*.

Exercise 98.

disturbance, *tūmultus*, *-ūs*, *m.*; *mōtus*, *-ūs*, *m.*
 excite, *excito*, *I*.
 cover, *ōpērio*, *-ire* *-ui*, *-pertum*; (shelter), *tēgo*, *-ēre*, *texi*, *tectum*.
 sometimes, *nonnunquam*, *interdum*.
 fall down, *delābor*, *-i*, *-lapsus*.
 further, *longius*, *ultrā*.
 urge on, *urgeo*, *ursi*.
 wolf, *lūpus*, *-i*, *m.*
 press upon, threaten, *insto*, *dat.*
 suffering, *dōlor*, *-ōris*, *m.* [also indignation, resentment].
 prey, *praeda*.

Exercise 99.

write, *scribo*, *-ēre*, *scripsi*, *scriptum*.
 change, *mūto*, *I.*

Exercise 100.

hasten, *prōpēro*, *I.*; *festino*, *I*.
 desire, *stūdiūm*, *āmor*, *cūpīdo*, *-inis*, *f.*
 desirous, anxious, *cūpīdus*.
 suffer, *pātiōr*, *-i*, *passus*.
 reading, *lectio*, *-onis*, *f.*
 win, *ādīpīscor*, *-i*, *adeptus*.
 honour, *hōnōs*, *-ōris*, *m.*; *fāma*.
 offer an opportunity, *fācio pōtes-tatem*; *do occāsionem*.

Exercise 101.

forage, *vb.*, **pābūlor**, **I.**
n. **pābūlum**.
 consult, **consūlo**, -ere, -sului, -sultum, *acc.*
 consult interests of, **consulo**, *dat.*
 disgraceful, **turpis**.
 devote oneself to, **stūdeo**, *dat.*
 in all directions, **passim**.

Exercise 102.

lead on, induce, **addūco**.
 waste time, **tempus tēro**.

Exercise 103.

face **obeo**, *acc.*
 fit for, **aptus ad**, **idōneus ad**.
 harm, injury, **damnum**, **incom-**
mōdum.
 send for, **arcesso**, -ēre, -īvi, -itum.
 one needs, **ōpus est**.
 officer, **lēgatus**, **praefectus**.
 citadel, **arx**, **arcis**, *f.*
 fill, **compleo**, -ēre, -plēvi, -plētum.
 merchandise, **merces**, *pl.*
 pardon, **vēnia**.

Exercise 104.

story, **fābula**.
 strange, **mīrābilis**.
 pay, **solvo**.
 found, **condo**.
 colony, **cōlōnia**.
 all agree, **constat inter omnes**.
 play, **lūdo**, -ēre, **lusi**, **lusum**.

Exercise 105.

lawful, **fas** [indeclinable].
 go to bed, **cūbītum eo**.
 on behalf of, **pro**, *abl.*

Exercise 106.

strike terror into, inspire with terror,
injicio terrōrem, *dat.*
 bring into danger, **in pēricūlum**
addūco.
 give ground, **cēdo**.
 unexpected, **sūbitus**, **inōpinatus**.
 break (a line), **inclino**, **I.**

Exercise 107.

invite, **invito**, **I.**
 Ireland, **Hibernia**.
 Irish, (*adj.*), **Hibernicus**.
 scatter, **dispergo**, -ēre, -si, -sum,
trans. (For *intrans.* use the
 Passive.)
 rebel, **rēbellis**.
 troop (of horse), **turma**.
 effect escape, **sālūtem fūgā pētēre**.

Exercise 108.

at close quarters, } **commīnus**, *adv.*
 hand to hand, }
 at a distance, **ēmīnus**.
 inexperienced, **impēritus**, *gen.*
 withdraw, **dēdūco**, *trans.*
 obstinate, **pertīnax**.
 obstinately, **obstīnate**.
 obstinacy, **obstīnācia**.
 recollection, **mēmōria**.
 prolong, **prōduco**, **dūco**.
 desert, **desēro** (-ēre, -ui, -tum),
transfūgio.
 desert (=revolt from), **dēficio**
ab.
 deserter, **transfūga**, **perfūga**.
 as far as, **usque ad**.
 outposts, **stātiones**, *f.*
 for fear of this, **hoc tīmore** (*lit.*
 through this fear).
 as, **pro**, *abl.*
 sentinels, **custōdes**, **vīgīliae**.

Exercise 109.

interest } it concerns.*
rēfert }

These take a Genitive of the person concerned. But instead of the Gen. of pronouns they take *meū, tuū*, etc. They may also be qualified by a Gen. of value or neuter adjective :

e.g. { *maximi interest* = it is of
 { *multum interest* the greatest importance.

They can be followed both by infinitive and indirect question.

family, household, *fāmīlia*.

property, *bōna*, *n. pl.*

evident, *mānifestus*.

remove, *transfēro*.

population, *pōpūlus*, *multitūdo*.

accomplish, *efficio*.

safety, *tūto*.

dismay, *pāvor*, *-ōris*, *m.*

Exercise 110.

Interrogative words.

who? what? *quis*, *quid* (*adj.* *qui*, *quae*, *quod*). Also *quisnam*.

which of two? *ūter*, *-tra*, *-trum*.

of what sort? *quālis*.

how great? *quantus*.

how many? *quot*.

how often? *quōties*.

how? (with *adj.* and *adv.*) *quam*.

how? (=in what manner?) *quōmōdo*, *quemadmodum*.

how long? *quamdiu*.

why? *cur*, *quārē*, *quamobrem*.

when? *quando*.

where? *ūbi*, *quā*.

whence? where from? *undē*.

whither? where to? *quo*.

increase, *trans.*, *augeo*, *-ēre*, *auxi*, *auctum*.

intrans., *creasco*, *-ēre*, *crēvi*, *crētum*.

regard as, *hābeo*, *dūco*.

cunning, *n.* *sollertia*.

adj. *sollers*.

panic, *pāvor*.

terms, *conditioes*.

worthy, *dignus*.

Exercise 112.

Words introducing indirect questions.

ask, *rōgo*; *interrogo*; *quaero*, *-ēre*, *quaesīvi*, *quaesitum* (*ex*).

know, *scio*.

not to know, *nescio*.

it is doubtful, *incertum*, *dūbium* *est*.

to be doubtful, to doubt, *dūbito*, *I.*

to ascertain, *cognosco*.

to deliberate, consult, *dēlibēro*, *I.*, *consūlo*.

to consider, *cōgīto*, *I.*, *rēpūto*, *I.*

to be of importance, make a difference, *interest*, *rēfert*. (See Voc. 109.)

it matters a great deal, *multum* or *magni interest*.

Exercise 113.

on purpose, *de industria*.

Exercise 114.

old, *sēnex*, *-is*.

happy, *fēlix*, *beātus*.

understand, *intellēgo*, *-ēre*, *-lexi*, *-lectum*.

young, *jūvenis*.

Exercise 115.

to-morrow, *cras*.
 intend, in animo habeo.
 late at night, *multā nocte*.
 what news? *quid nōvi?*
 regiment, *cōhors*, -*ortis*, *f*.
 quite, *admōdum*.

Exercise 117.

go on, happen, *passive of āgo*.
 traveller, *viātor*.

Exercise 118.

prophet. } *vātes*, -*is*.
 prophetess }
 piece (of gold), *nummus*, -*i*, *m*.
 once more, *rursus*.
 price, *prētium*.

Exercise 119.

wonder, *mīror*.
 offer, *offĕro*, *offerre*, *obtūli*, *oblatum*.
 show, *ostendo*, -*ĕre*, -*di*, -*sum*, or -*tum*.

Exercise 120.

add, *addo*, -*ĕre*, -*dīdi*, -*ditum*.
 moved (by anger), *commōtus*.
 sign, *signum*.
 rather, *pōtius*.
 cut in two, *discindo*, -*ĕre*, -*scīdi*,
scissum.
 augur, *augur*, -*ŭris*.

Exercise 121.

following, next, *proximus*.
 recover, *trans.*, *rĕcipio*.
 rising ground, *ĕditus lōcus*.

trick, *dōlus*, -*i*, *m*.
 most of them, *plĕrique*.
 encamp, *consīdo*, -*ĕre*, -*sedī*,
sessum.

Exercise 122.

indeed, *quīdem*.
 once, formerly, *ōlim*, *quondam*.
 by means of, *per*.
 overcome (by fear), *perculsus*.
 whereupon, *quo facto*

Exercise 123.

celebrated, *praeclārus*.
 catch sight of, *conspīcio*, -*ĕre*,
 -*spexi*, -*spectum*; *conspīcor*, *I*.
 some days after, *aliquot post diebus*.
 door, *jānuā*.
 in astonishment, *attōnītus*.
 be mad, *fūro*, -*ĕre* (no Perfect).
adj. *insānus*, *āmens*.
 exclaim, *clāmo*, *I*.

Exercise 124.

custom, *mōs*, *mōris*, *m*.
 schoolmaster, *māgister*, -*tri*.
 without the knowledge of. Use
inscius.
 former . . . latter, *ille . . . hic*.
 commit to one's care, *mando*, *I*.
acc. and *dat.*
 rod, *virga*.
 such . . . as, *talis . . . qualis*.
 drive, *āgo*.
 severe, *grāvis*.
 punishment, *pōena*, *supplicium*.

Exercise 125.

panic, *pāvor*.
 in silence, *silentio*.
 decree, *dĕcerno*, -*ĕre*, -*crĕvi*, -*crĕ-*
tum

clothe, *vestio*.
 stroke, *mulceo*, *mulsi*, *mulsum*,
 beard, *barba*.
 strike, *percütio*, -*äre*, -*cussi*, -*cus-*
sum.

Exercise 126.

visit, *vīso*, -*äre*, -*si*, -*sum*.
 unlike, *dissīmilis*.
 discuss, *dissēro*, -*äre*, *ui*, -*tum* (*de*).
 fortunate, *fēlix*.
 happy, *beātus*.
 whoever, whatever, *quisquis*, *quic-*
quid, or *quicunque*, *quaecun-*
que, *quodcunque*.

Exercise 127.

piety, duty (natural affection), *piētas*.
 ox, *bōs*, *bōvis*, *c*.
 drag, draw, *trāho*, -*äre*, *traxi*,
tractum.
 cart, *carrus*, -*i*, *m*.
 both, *ambo*.
 prove, *dēmonstro*, *I*.
 liable to, *obnoxius*, *dat*.
 misfortune, *res adversae*.
 honorable (of things), *hōnestus*.
 (of persons), *prōbus*.
 indeed, *rēvērā*.

Exercise 128.*Impersonal Verbs.***A.**

me *miseret*, I pity.
 me *taedet*, I am tired of.
 me *pūdet*, I am ashamed of.
 me *paenitet*, I am sorry for, I
 repent.

The above "verbs of feeling" may take a Genitive for a further object; e.g. *me paenitet crudelitatis*, I am sorry for my cruelty.

B.

me *dēcet*, it is becoming to me.
 me *oportet*, it is my duty, I ought.

C.

mihī plācet, I am pleased, it seems good to me, I am resolved.
mihī licet, I am allowed, I may.
mihī accidit, it happens to me.
mihī contingit, it happens to me (generally of good fortune).

All the verbs B and C may be followed by an Infinitive. C may be followed by a Subjunctive.

D.

(For interest, refer, see Voc. 109.)

Exercise 129.

of one's own accord, *suā sponte*.
 parent, *pārens*.
 deed, *factum*.

Exercise 130.

cowardice, *ignāvia*.
 kind, *bēnignus*.
 kindness, *bēnignitas*, *bēnē-*
volentia, *bēnēficiūm* (= act of kindness).
 towards (of feelings), *ergā*, *acc*.
 staff (= officers), *lēgati*.

Exercise 131.*Words followed by genitive.*

remember, *mēmīni* (sometimes *acc*).
 forget, *oblīviscor* (sometimes *acc*).
 recall, recollect, *rēmīniscor* (sometimes *acc*).
 remind, *admōneo*, *acc*. and *gen*.
 accuse, *accūso*, *I*, *acc* and *gen*.
 pity, *mīsereor*.
 mindful, *mēmōr*.

Ex. 131—*contd.*

forgetful, **immēmōr.**
 ignorant of, **inscius, impērītus.**
 skilled in, **pērītus.**
 experienced in, **expertus.**
 anxious to, desirous of, **cūpīdus.**
 eager for, **āvīdus.**
 unaccustomed to, **insuetus.**
 recollection, remembrance, **mēm-
 ōria.**
 skill, **perītia.**
 desire, **cūpīdo, stūdiūm.**
 knowledge (of things), **cognītio**
 (of persons), acquaintance, **con-
 suētūdo, -inis, f.**

—
 belonging to other people, **āliēnus.**
 address, **allōquor, -i, -lōcūtus.**
 absent, **absens.**
 necessary, **nēcessārius.**
 past, **praetērītus.**
 for the sake of honour, **hōnōris
 causā.**
 administer public affairs, **rem-
 publicam administro, I.**

Exercise 132.

spend (life, period of time, etc.),
āgo.
 treachery, **prōditio.**
 powerful, **pōtens.**
 design, **consilium.**
 give up, abandon, **rēlinquo, acc. ;
 desisto, abl.**
 swim, **nāto, I.**

Exercise 133.

now, moreover (continuing a narra-
 tive), **autem** (second word).
 ship of war, **longa nāvis.**
 several, **āliquot, complūres.**

turn back (especially with object
 unaccomplished), **rēvertor.**
 proud, **sūperbus.**
 looks, expression, face, **vultus, -ūs,
 m.**
 dress, attire, **ornatus, -ūs.**
 splendid, **insignis.**
 come on board, embark, (in) **navem
 conscendo.**
 embark (*trans.*), **impōno**
 (*militēs*, etc.).
 land, disembark (*intr.*), **ēgredior e
 navi ; (trans.) expono (militēs,
 etc.).**
 by chance, **forte, cāsu.**

Exercise 134.

need, **ēgeo, indīgeo, abl. or gen.**
 he needs money, **opus est ei
 pecuniā.**
 be without, lack, **cāreo, abl.**
 kindly, **bēnigne.**
 hold on course, **cursum tēnere.**

Exercise 135.

lately, **nūper.**
 inhabitant (of country), **incōla.**
 (of city), **civis.**
 (of town), **oppīdānus.**
 garment, **vestis, -is, f. ; vesti-
 mentum.**
 stream, **rīvus, -i.**
 a certain (= Indefinite Article),
quidam.
 want, **cūpio.**
 flow, **fluo.**
 rise, **ōrior.**
 outside, **extrā.**
 district, **rēgio, -onis, f.**

Exercise 136.

with the intention of, *eo consilio ut*.
wreck (of ship), *frango, -ĕre, frēgi, fractum*.

to be shipwrecked, *ejicior in litus*
(or *litore*).

Exercise 137.

key, *clāvis, -is, f.*

elders, *patres*.

give an opinion, *sententiam fero*.

wake, arouse, *excito, I.*

at least, *certē, saltem*.

Exercise 138.

recognise, *agnosco, -ĕre, -nōvi, -nītum*.

mob, *turba, multitūdo*.

in no wise, *haudquāquam*.

drag, *trāho*.

magistrate, *māgistratus, -ūs*.

detain, *rētineo*.

Exercise 139.

sister, *sōror*.

village, *vīcus*.

entrance, *ōs (ōris), n., ostium, adītus, -ūs, m.*

cavern, *spelunca*.

limb, *membrum*.

form, *forma, figūra*.

colour, *cōlor*.

skin, *cūtis, -is, f.*

tinge, *tingo, -ĕre, tinxi, tinctum*.

green, *viridis*.

set before, *offĕro, prōpōno*.

touch, *tango, -ĕre, tēgi, tactum*.

torment, torture, *crūcio, I.*

sad, gloomy, *tristis*.

tear, *lacrīma*.

Exercise 140.

accustomed to, *assuētus ad, assuēfactus ad*.

healthy, *sānus*.

light, *lux, lūcis, f.*

flock, *grex, grēgis, m.*

sound, *sōnus, -i, m.; sōnītus, -ūs, m.*

wander, *vāgor, I.*

stupefied, *stūpĕfactus*.

excessive, *nīmius*.

heat, *cālor*.

thus, *sic, hoc mōdo*.

Exercise 141.

check, restrain, *cōhībeo*.

Exercise 142.

short, *brĕvis*.

quiet, *tranquillus*.

set, post, *dispōno; collōco, I.*

chosen, picked, *dēlectus*.

fall on, *incīdo, -ĕre, -cīdi, -cāsūm*
(in).

Exercise 143.

insolence, *arrōgantia*.

Exercise 144.

refuse, *rĕcūso, I.*

theft, *furtum*.

put in prison, *in vincūla conjicio*.

admit, *admittō*.

fit to, *dignus qui, subj.*

launch, *dĕdūco*.

patiently, *aequo animo*.

Exercise 145.

shirk, *vīto, I., detrecto, I.*

Exercise 146.

suitable, *idōneus*.
 rashly, *tēmēre*.
 towards evening, *sub vesperum*.
 take place of, relieve, *succēdo, dat.*
 disabled, *confectus*.
 ladder, *scāla*.
 scale, *ascendo*.
 elephant, *ēlēphantus, -i, m.*
 in front of, *prō*.
 bring up, *admōveo*.

Exercise 147.

prepared to, *pārātus, Inf.*
 oppose, bar way of, hinder, *obsto*,
obsisto, dat.; *impēdio, acc.*;
prōhībeo, acc.
 build, *aedīfīco, I.*
 in two days, *biduo*,
 for two days, *biduum*.
 opposite bank, *altera rīpa*.
 landing, *ēgressus, -us*.
 up the river, in *adversum flūmen*,
adverso flumine.

Exercise 148.

Carthaginian, *Poenus (adj. Pūnicus)*
 cold, *frīgidus*.
 (noun), *frīgus, -ōris, n.*
 desolate, *dēsertus*.
 especially, *praesertim*.
 want, *inōpia*.
 hardship, *lābor*.
 terrible, *terribilis*.
 downwards, *deorsum*.
 rest, *se rēfīcēre*.
 encourage, *confirmo, I.*

Exercise 149.

see to (undertake), the building of a
 house, *curare (suscipere) aedi-*
fīcandam domum.
 accuse of, *accūsō, I.* (with Gen. of
 crime).
 treachery, *prōditio*.

Exercise 150.

until (with nouns), *usque ad*.

Exercise 151.

delay, *mōror, I.*; *cunctor, I.*
 winter quarters, *hīberna, n. pl.*
 hold a levy, *dēlectum (Ath. decl.)*
habeo.

Exercise 153.

get out, *evado, -ēre, -si, -sum*.
 pass, defile, *saltus, -ūs, m.*; *angus-*
tiae, fauces, f.
 narrow, *angustus*.
 in vain, *frustrā, nēquicquam*.
 both, *ūterque*.
 clothes, *vestis, -is, f.*
 open, *apertus*.
 plain, *campus, -i, m.*, *plānitias, f. 5.*
 still (= even), *etiam*.

Exercise 154.

fair terms, *aequae condītionēs*.
 send under the yoke, *sub jūgum*
mitto.
 treaty, *foedus, -ēris, n.*
 clothes, *vestis, -is, f.*, *vestītus,*
-ūs, m.

Exercise 156.

not yet, *nondum*.
 assault (on town), *oppugnatio*.
 departure, *prōfectio*.

Exercise 157.

standards, *signa*, *n. pl.*
overtake, *assēquor*, *consēquor*.

Exercise 158.

invade, *invādo*, -ēre, -vāsi, -vāsum
(in *acc.*).
return, *rēditus*, -ūs, *m.*

Exercise 159.

peasant, *agricōla*, *m.*
vineyard, *vinētum*.
dig up, *effōdio*, -ēre, -fōdi, -fossūm.
deceive, *dēcīpio*, *fallo*.
fertile, *fertilis*.
produce, *ēdo*, -ēre, *ēdīdi*, *ēdītum*.
regret, *me paenitet*, *gen.*
vine, *vītis*, -is, *f.*
excellent, *ēgrēgius*.
disobey, disregard, *negligo*, -ēre,
-lexi, -lectum.

Exercise 160.

because, *quod*, *quia*.
[Use *quia* for actual cause only,
and therefore with *Ind.*, except
in *Indirect Statement*.]
since, *quōniam*, *quando*, *quum*.
[*quum* always with *Subj.*]
on the ground that, for the reason
that, *propterea quod*.
this being so, in this state of
affairs, *quae quum ita sint*,
essent.
rejoice, be glad, *gaudeo*, -ēre,
gāvisus (*quod*).
it is for the good of, *ex ūso est*,
usui est, *dat.*
condemn to death, *capitis damno*, *I.*

Exercise 161.

late, *sēro*, *adv.*
sound the retreat, *rēceptui cānere*.
exile (person), *exsul*, -ūlis.
exile (state), *exsiliūm*.
treason, *mājestas*.

Exercise 162.

triumph, *triumphus*, -i, *m.*
fall (of city), use *cāpio*.
be disliked by, *displiceo*, *dat.*
pride, *sūperbia*.
equal, *pār*, *pāris*.
chariot, *currus*, -ūs, *m.*
white, *albus*.
sacred, *sācer*, -ra, -rum.
Jupiter, *Juppiter*, *Jōvis*.
finally, *postrēmo*, *dēnique*.
spoils, *spōlia*, *n. pl.*
Apollo, *Apollo*, -īnis.
too much, *nimius*, *nimis* (*with gen.*).

Exercise 163.

contrary to, *contra*.
be brought to trial, put on trial,
reus sum.
law of nations, international law,
jus gentium.
oppress, oppress, -ēre, -pressi,
-pressum.
unjust, *injustus*.
any, *adj.* in negative sentences,
ullus.
govern, *rēgo*.

Exercise 164.

fall on, *cāpio*.
oracle, *ōrāculum*.
untouched, *intēger*, -ra, -rum.

Ex 164—contd.

protect, *servo*, *l.*
 gulf, *sīnus*, *-ūs*, *m.*
 except, *praeter*.
 holy, *sācer*, *-cra*, *-crum*.

Exercise 165.

plague, *pestis*, *pestilētia*.
 survive, *sūpersum*.
 set sail, *navem solvo*.
 meet with, obtain, *nanciscor*, *-i*,
nactus.
 favourable, *sēcundus*.
 west, *occidens*.
 towards, *ad*.

Exercise 166.

gaze at, *specto*, *l.*
 warrior, *jūvēnis*.
 each of two, *ūterque* [each army =
ūterque exercitus].
 one...other (of two), *alter...alter*.
 choose, *deligo*, *-ēre*, *-lēgi*, *-lec-*
tum.
 prevail, *sūpēro*, *l.*
 spear, *hasta*.
 slip, *lābor*.
 deadly, *mortifer*, *fūnestus*.
 rush, *rūo*, *-ēre*, *rui*, *ruitum*.
 rush forward, *prōruo*.
 be born, *nascor*, *-i*, *natus*.
 carry off, *abripio*, *-ēre*, *-ui*, *-reptum*.

Exercise 167.

carelessness, *negligentia*.
 surprise, *opprīmo*.
 in front, *a fronte*.
 waggon, *plaustrum*.
 artillery, *tormenta*, *n. pl.*; *ballistae*.

Exercise 168.

Verbs and phrases to be followed by quin.

non dūbīto quin.
non est dūbium quin.
quis dubitat quin? (virtual *neg.*).
fiēri non potest quin, it is im-
 possible that . . . not.
facere non possum quin, I cannot
 help. . . .
minimum abest quin, be within a
 very little of (always *impersonal*).
nīhil praetermitto quin, leave no-
 thing undone to.
nēmō est quin sciat, there is nobody
 who does not know; everybody
 knows; all the world knows.

do wrong, *pecco*, *l.*
 be on one's side, *fāveo*, *dat.*; *ab*
aliquo stare.
 keep word, *fidem praesto*.

Exercise 169.

birth, race, *gēnus*, *-ēris*, *n.*
 scorn, *contemno*, *-ēre*, *-tempſi*,
-temptum.
 by force of arms, *vi et armis*.
 multitude, *plebs*, *plēbis*, *f.*

Exercise 170.

Verbs of hindering and preventing,
which may be followed by quo-
minus, and when neg. by quin
 hinder, *impēdio*, *acc.*, *obsto*, *dat.*
 prevent, *prōhibeo* (which prefers
Inf.).
 deter, *deterreo*.

refuse, *rēcūso*, I. (also with *Inf.* in *Neg.* sentences).
it was due to you that...not, *per te stetit quominus*.

Alps, *Alpes*, *pl.*
weigh anchor, *ancōras tollo*.

Exercise 171.

pass a law, *lēgem jūbeo*.
threat, *mīnae*.
destroy, *dēleo*.
supply, *praebeo*; *acc.* of thing,
dat. of person.
tribune, *tribunus (plebis)*.

Exercise 172.

hesitate, *dūbito*, with *Inf.*
Salamis, *Salamis (acc. -īna)*.

Exercise 173.

make an assault, *oppugno*, I.
report, *rēfēro*; *nuntio*, I.
cause panic, *pāvōrem injīcio*, *dat.*
base, *turpis*.

Exercise 174.

the salvation of. Cf. Ex. 85.
again and again, *identidem*.
with great loss, *plūrimis āmissis*,
magnā strāge.
offer a prayer to, invoke, *prēcōr*, I.
drown, *submergo*, -ēre, -mersi,
-mersum.
contrary to expectation, *praeter spem, ōpīnionem*.
repulse, *repello*.

Exercise 175.

provoke, *lācesso*.
ambassador, *lēgator*.
violate, *viōlo*, I.
take part in, *interesse*, *dat.*
vow, *jūro*, I.
with the help of the gods, *cum dis*.
avenge, *ulciscor*, -i, *ultus*.
for some time, *aliquamdiu*.
be amazed, *mīror*, I.

Exercise 176.

as many as, *tot . . . quot*.
neighbour, neighbouring, *vīcīnus*.
to the last, *ad ultimum, ad extrēmum*.
shut up, *claudio*, -ēre, -si, -sum.
survive, *superesse*, *dat.*
independence, freedom, *libertas*.

Exercise 177.

greet, *sālūto*, I.
stretch out, *porrigo*, -ēre, -rexi, -rectum.
despatches, *litterae*.
read through, *perlēgo*, -lēgi, -lectum.
draw a circle round, *circumscribo*.
rod, *virga*.

Exercise 178.

shed (tears), *effundo*.
jealousy, *invidia*.
hatred, *ōdium*.
to be most important, *maximi interesse (Voc. 109)*.

Exercise 179.

elated, *ēlātus*.
departure, *discessus*, -ūs, *m.*; *prōfectio*.

Ex. 179—Contd.

more. (See Synonyms.)
boast, **jacto**, I.
transfer, **transfero**.
land forces, **terrestres copiae**.
make straight for, **recto cursu p̄to**.
ravage, **p̄p̄ilor**, I. ; **vasto**, I.
unconquerable, invincible, invictus.
ind̄omitus.

Exercise 180.

a cry was raised, **cl̄amatum est**.
reverse, **incomm̄odum**.
give battle to, **proelium committere cum**.
centre (of army), **m̄dia ācies**.
wing, **āla**.
on both sides, **utrimque**.
foremost ranks, **pr̄mi ordines**.
flank, **l̄atus**, **-ēris**, *n.*
soldier of the line, **l̄gionarius miles**.

Exercise 181.

bring forward (a law), **fero**.
common people, **plebs**, **pl̄bis**.
satisfy, **indulgeo**, **-ēre**, **-si**, **-tum**.
aim at, **peto**.
kingship, **regnum**, **r̄gia p̄testas**.
deliver a speech before, **ōr̄ationem h̄b̄ere āpud**.
lessen, diminish, **d̄im̄nuo**.
iniquitous, (unjust), **in̄iquus**.

Exercise 182.

before, **antequam**, **pr̄iusquam**.
after, **postquam**.

N.B. Ante, prius, post, may be separated from quam by the principal verb and other words. See the last example.

until, **dum**, **d̄onec**, **quoad**.
whilst, as long as, **donec**, **quoad**.
as soon as, **sim̄ilac**.
as often as, **qūōties**.
since, from the time when, **ex quo tempore**.

Exercise 183.

man, **compleo**.
raise a shout, **cl̄am̄orem tollo**.
advance standards, **signa fero**.
pass, **praetereo**.

Exercise 184.

finish, complete, **perficio**.
address, **cont̄ionor āpud**.
take the field, **exercitum ēd̄uco**.
in close order, **confertus**, **conferto agmine**.

Exercise 185.

stand firm, **resisto**.
province, **pr̄ov̄incia**.
resign the consulship, **abire (se abdicare) cons̄ulatu**.
field (of battle), **ācies**.
give leave, **j̄ubeo**.
adjourn, be dismissed, **dimittor**.

Exercise 186.

armament, **classis**.
prevail upon, **persuādeo**.
result (*n.*), **ēventus**.
result (*v̄b.*), **evenio**.
unfortunate, **inf̄elix**.
fall into confusion, **perturbor**, I.
with one another, **inter se**.
darkness, **t̄enebrae**.
reduce, **r̄d̄igo**.

Exercise 187.

feign, *simulo*.
 south, *mēridies*, -ēi, *m*.
 despair, *spem abjicio*.
 feast, *ēpūlor*, *I*.
 drink, *bībo*, -ēre, *bībi*.
 win the day, *vinco*.
 feign, *sīmūlo*, *I*.
 entice, *ēlicio*, -ēre, -cui, -citum.
 havoc, *strāges*, -is, *f*.
 pierce, *transfīgo*, -ēre, -fixi, *fixum*.

Exercise 189.

relief, *auxīlium*.

Exercise 190.

come upon, *incido in*.
 cut down, *succido*, -ēre, -cidi, -cīsum.
 without doubt, *sīne dūbio*.
 quietly, unobserved, *clam*.
 recall, *rēvōco*, *I*.
 prosper, *rem gēro prospere*.
 treat for, *ago de*.

Exercise 191.

keep, detain, *rētīneo*.
 victorious, *victor*.
 conspirator, *conjūrat*.
 gather round, *cingo*.
 in time, *ad tempus, tempori*.
 hold a conference, *collōquor*.
 stealthily, *furtim*.
 lead aside, *dēdūco*.

Exercise 192.

raise a siege, *desistere obsidione*.
 run short, fail, *deficio*.

hold out (of provisions), *suppeto*.
 harass, *lācesso*.
 renew, *rēdīntegro*, *I*; *rēnōvo*, *I*.

Exercise 193.

wander, *vāgor*, *I*; *erro*, *I*.
 be annoyed at, taken ill, *aegre fero*.
 repay, *reddo*.
 without accomplishing anything, *re infectā*.
 appease, *pāco*, *I*.
 take part in, *interesse*. Cf. Ex. 61.
 credit, *laus*, -dis, *f*.
 fresh, *intēger*.
 riot, *tūmultus*, *ūs, m*.
 insult, *injūria*, *contūmēlia*.
 come to an agreement, *consentio*, -ire, -sensi, -senum.
 noon, *mēridies*.
 bring to trial, *reum fācio*.

Exercise 194.

disheartened, *mētū commōtus*.
 defeat, *clādes*, is, *f*; *incommōdum*.
 propose, *censeo*, -ēre, *censui* [*acc.* and *inf.* or *subj.*].
 meet with, *pātior*, -i, *passus*.
 still, *adhuc*.
 possible, translate by *facio* or *fiēri pōtest*.
 western part, *pars quae ad occāsum sōlis spectat*.
 interior, *pars intērior*.

Exercise 195.

appoint, *constituo*.
 fatal, *fūnestus*.
 in despair, *re* or *sālūte desperata*; *spe abjectā*.
 for this purpose, *ad hoc*.

Ex. 195.—*contd.*

in two divisions, *bīpartīto*.
red, *rūber*, -bra, -brum.
poison, *vēnēnum*.
Syracuse, *Syracusae*.

Exercise 196.

obstacle, *difficultas*.
surmount, *sūpĕro*, I.
— so signally, *tantā strāge*.
ambuscade, *insīdiae*. In the last sentence use *ex insidiis invadĕre*.
open fight, pitched battle, *justum proelium*, *ācies*.
in the guise of, *mōre*.
warning, *exemplo esse*. Cf. Ex. 85.
make trial of, *expĕrior*.
considering, calculating, *rātus* (*reor*).
rashly, *tĕmĕre*, *inconsulte*.
slight, *aspĕrnor*, I.
narrow, *angustus*, *artus*.

Exercise 197.

without success, to no purpose, *frustrā*, *nĕquicquam*.
private citizen, *privātus*.
wholly, altogether [*with neg. and virtual neg.*], *omnīno*.
seat of war, *sĕdes belli*.
assign, *attribuo*.
control of campaign, chief command, *totius belli summa*, *summa imperii*.
in triumph, *victor*. [Triumphus = the triumphal procession of a Roman general.]

Exercise 198.

dawn, *illūcescit*, *illuxit*.
break down, *prōruo*.
seek refuge in, fly for refuge to, *confūgio ad*.

incensed with, *iratus*, *dat.*
partly, *partim*.
hitherto, *adhuc*.
grudge, resentment, *invīdia*.

Exercise 199.

dream, *vĕ. somnio*, I.; *somnio vīdeo* [= to see in a dream].
dream, *n. somnium*.
egg, *ōvum*.
hang, *intr. pendeo*.
hang, *trans. suspendo*.
mean, indicate, *signīfico*, I.
bed, *cūbile*, *n.*
dig, *fōdio*.
I for my part, *ĕquidem* [*use only with 1st pers. sing.*].
be vexed, *aegre* or *mōleste fero*.

Exercise 200.

charge, *crīmen*, -inis, *n.*
prosperity, advantage, *commōdum*.
to the best of his ability, *pro virili parte*.
devotion, *stūdium*.
desperate, *perditus*.
assume, *ūsurpo*, I.
supreme power, *summa imperii*.
crisis, *discrīmen*.
wrong, *injūria*.

Exercise 201.

fit to, *aptus*, *dignus qui* (a consecutive clause).
governor of a province, *prōconsul*.
worship, *cōlo*.
rob, *spōlio*, I.; *diripio*.
offend, *displiceo*, *dat.*
character, *mōres*, *pl.*
commit, *admitto*.

theft, *furtum*.
 thief, *fūr, fūris, m.*
 jest, *jōcus, -i, m.*
 justify, *excūso, I.*
 cup, *pōcūlum*.
 statue, *stātua*.
 stretch out, *extendo, porrigo*.
 benefit, *bēnēficiūm*.
 now for a long time, *jāmpridem,*
jāmdudum.
 cloak, *pallium*.
 military cloak, *sāgum*
 wear, *pass. of induo, vestio*.
 woollen, *lāneus*.
 wool, *lāna*.

border from al. l. i. t. c. l.
Exercise 203.

on foot, *pedibus*.
 restrain, *mōdēror, I., dat.*
 prudent, *prūdēns*.

Exercise 204.

mock, *irrideo, dat.*
 throw bridge over, *pontem facio*
in, abl.
 straight, *recto itinere, directo*.
 subdue, *subīgo, in pōtestatem*
rēdīgo.
 none the less, *nīhlōmīnus*.
 tribute, *tribūtum, vectigal, -ālis, n.*
 impose, *impōno*.
 prosperous, *fēlix*.
 wrong, *injūriam facio, dat.*
 revenge oneself on, *poenas sūmo*
de; ulciscor, acc.
 bribery, *ambītus, -ūs, m.*
 it is no advantage, *minime prōdest*.

Exercise 205.

poet, *poeta*.
 relieve, *sublēvo, I.*
 capitol, *capitōlium*.

in former times, *antiquitus*.
 capable of, *aptus ad*.
 false, *falsus*.
 certainly, *certo, sīne dūbio*.
 starve, *fāme pereō*.

Exercise 206.

take place of, *succēdo, dat.*
 cut down, *occido*.
 front rank, *prima ācies*.
 remind, *admōneo*.
 bill, *rōgātio*.
 influence, *auctōritas*.
 have influence, *vāleo*.
 arrest, *comprehendo, -ēre, -di,*
-sum.

Exercise 207.

object of hatred. (See Ex. 85.)
 incur, *subeo*.

Exercise 208.

lose heart, *despēro, animum dē-*
mitto.
 fall into hands of, *in pōtestatem,*
venire.
 gloriously, *(cum) summa laude*.
 inflict . . . on someone, *aliquem*
afficere, abl.
 avenger, *ultor*.
 perjury, *laesa fides*.
 be favourable to, *fāveo, dat.; sto*
ab aliquo.
 violate, *viōlo, I.*
 be offended at, *aegre fero*.
 misery, suffering, *dōlor*.

Exercise 209.

impregnable, *inexpugnābilis*.
 steep, *praeruptus*.
 lines, *mūnitiones, munimenta*.
 siege works, *ōpera, n. pl.*

Exercise 210.

marvellous, *mīrus*.
 before the consuls, *apud consules*.
 condemn, *condemno, I; damno, I*.
 acquit, *absolvo*.
 loyal, *fīdēlis*.

Exercise 211.

go well, *prōficio*.
 fainthearted, *tīmīdus*.
 to the death, *usque ad mortem*.
 burdensome (cf. Ex. 85), *mōlestus*.
 speech, *ōrātiō*.
 confess, *confiteor*.
 side (of river), *ripa*.

Exercise 212.

suffer hardship, *lābōro*.
 bribe, *pēcūnia*.
 philosopher, *phīlōsōphus*.
 origin, *ōrīgo, -īnis, f*.

Exercise 213.

in my house, *apud me*.
 misfortune, *mālum*.

Exercise 214.

fugitive, *fūgītīvus*.
 imagine, *reor, dūco*.
 really, *rēvērā*.
 rest, *reliqua pars*.

Exercise 215.

ignorance, *inscientia*.
 responsible for, *auctor*.
 main road, *via, certum iter*.
 unmolested, *incōlūmis*.
 on equal terms, *aequo Marte,*
aequā contentione.
 cliff, *rūpes, -is, f*.

Exercise 216.

named, by name, *nomine*.
 particularly, *praeter omnes*.
 overthrow, *sterno*.
 sight, *spectācūlum*.
 extraordinary, *ēgrēgius*.
 crown, *cōrōna*.
 fine, *mulcto aliquem, abl*.
 expose oneself to, *se objicere, dat.,*
occurro, dat.
 eagerness, *stūdium*.
 dismayed, *perterritus, pavore per-*
culsus.
 marvellous, *mīrus*.

Exercise 217.

master of the horse, *māgister*
equitum.
 without the orders of, *injussu*.

Exercise 218.

cut off, *dēsēco*,
 accustomed, *sōlītus*.
 settlement, *cōlōnia*.
 with minds made up, *obstīnātis*
animis.
 maimed, *saucius*.

Exercise 219.

fit out, *instruo*.
 rescue, *rēdūco*.
 survivor, *sūperstes, -itis, or verb*
sūperesse.
 break, *frango*.
 reduce, *rēdīgo*.
 naval, *nāvālis*.
 off, *prep. contrā*.
 promontory, *prōmontōrium*.
 take on board, *in navem excipio*.
 defender, *dēfensor*.
 earn, *mēreo, mēreo*.

Exercise 220.

hold a command, *impĕrium obtĭneo*.
 prove oneself, *se praebĕre*.
 confidence, trust, *fides*.
 complete, *certus, mĕnifestus*.
 treat, *ŭtor*.
 place before, prefer, *antĕpōno*. Cf.
 Ex. 61.
 consent, *vŏlo*.
 strict, *sĕvĕrus*.
 discipline, *disciplĭna*.
 energy, *stŭdium*.
 influence with, *auctŏritas apud*.
 pitched battle, *justum proelium*.
 recover, *rĕcipio*.

Exercise 221.

treat, *afficio*.
 hospitality, *hospĭtium*.
 host, guest, *hospes*.
 everywhere, *ŭbique*.
 raiment, *vestis, -is, f.*
 weave, *texo, -ĕre, texui, textum*.
 sumptuous, *magnĭficus, lautus*.
 hold games, *lŭdos cĕlĕbro, I.*
 stung, *commotus, lĕcessĭtus*.
 provide, *praebeo*.
 bestow, *dono, I.*
 surpass, *supero, I.*
 sports, *ludi*.

Exercise 222.

pacify, *pāco, I.*
 connected by birth, *cognatus,*
natu conjunctus.
 claim, *ŭsurpo, I.*
 first place, *principĕtus, -ŭs, m.*
 devoid of, *nŭdatus, vĕcuus*.
 remedy, *rĕmĕdium*.

attempt, *cŏnatus, or use verb.*
 with the good will of. Use *apprŏ-*
bare.
 Spain, *Hispania*.

Exercise 223.

convict of treason, *damno mĕjes-*
tatis.
 inflict injury, *injŭriam inferre, dat.*
 innocent, *insons, -tis*.
 quite, *sĕtis*.

Exercise 224.

to do one's best to, *id ĕgĕre ut*.
 risk, *periclitŏr, I.*

Exercise 225.

remain silent, *tĕceo*.
 bind (by oath), *obstringo*.
 in the presence of, *cŏram*.
 oath, *jusjurandum*.
 disband, *dimitto*.
 indignation, *ira, dŏlor*.

Exercise 226.

foreign, *externus*.
 observe customs, *instĭtŭtis ŭti*.
 beresponsible, translate by, "I must
 give an account," *rĕtionem*
reddo.
 government, *magistratŭs, ei qui*
republicam administrant.
 resolutely, obstinate, *summa con-*
stantia.

Exercise 227.

bring to a close, *conficio*.
 satisfied, *contentus*.
 geniality, *cŏmĭtas*.
 win affection, *stŭdium concĭliare*.

Ex. 227—contd.luxury, *luxus*, -ūs, *m.*want, *inōpia*.the result is that, *ēvenit ut*.positively, absolutely (with negative words), *omnīno*.undertake, *suscipio*.**Exercise 228.**diminish, *dīmīnuo*, *trans.*more numerous, *mājor*.come out, prove, *ēvādo*, -ēre, -is, -sum.experience, *ūsus*, -ūs, *m.*, *pērītia*.in close order, *conferto agmine*.face, *obeo*, *acc.*adverse, *adversus*, *inīquus*.trouble, *lābor*.**Exercise 229.**differ, *inter se differre*.grumble at, *quēror de*, *aegrē fero*.risk one's life, *pēriculum cāpītis sūbire*.crush, *opprīmo*; *prōffigo*, *I.*acquire, *acquīro*, *nanciscor*.**Exercise 230.**unshaken, *immōtus*.readily, *libenter*.two-thirds, *duae partes*.inspire, *injicio aliquid alicui*.enthusiasm, *stūdium*.the cause was lost. Use *actum est de*.display, *praesto*.consecrate, *vōveo*.desert, *deficio*.grant, do, *mando*, *I.*, *trado*.**Exercise 231.**behave, *se gērere*.reward, *praemio afficio*.depend on, *ponitur in*.foresee, *prōvideo*.his object was, *id ēgit ut*.be devoted to, *stūdeo*, *dat.*affairs of state, *res publicae*.

Set an example. (See Ex. 85.)

Exercise 232.rush into, *irruo in*.foretell, *praedico*.leisure, *ōtium*.distinguished, *insignis*.**Exercise 233.**at the battle of Zama, *pugna Zamae facta*.mercenaries, *mercēnārii milites*.contrary to expectation, *praeter spem*, *ōpīnionem*.veteran, *veterānus*.disorderly, *tūmultuārius*.rabble, *turba*.**Exercise 234.**show presence of mind, *impāvīdus esse*, *se intrēpide gerere*.explain, *expōno*, *ēdo*,cry, *clāmor*.groan, *gēmītus*, -ūs.undergo sentence, *poenam subeo*.crowd round, *circumfundor*, *dat.*sufferings, *māla*, *n. pl.***Exercise 235.**consider, *dēlibēro de*.silent, *tācītus*.Egypt, *Aegyptus*, -i, *f.*empire, *impērium*.**Exercise 236.**proscribe, *proscribo*.put out to sea, *ēvēhor* (in *altum*).adverse, *adversus*.

litter, *lectica*.

stretch out, *porrigo*.

neck, *cervices*, *f. plu.*

drive back, *repello*.

considering his critical position, *ut in tanto discrimine*.

Exercise 237.

be under protection, *fīdem sequor*.

Exercise 239.

enquire, hold enquiry about, *quaestionem habeo de*.
wrong, *injuria*.

Exercise 240.

humour, *mōrem gero*, *dat*.
freedman, *libertus*, *i*.

Exercise 241.

regiment, *cōhors*.
(raw) recruit, *tiro*, *-ōnis*.
Po, *Pādus*, *-i*, *m*.
flower (of army), *rōbur*, *-ōris*, *m*.

Exercise 242.

deaf, *surdus*, *auribus captus*.
dishonour, disgrace, *dēdēcōro*, *I* ;
dēdēcōri esse.
regret, *dēplōro*, *I*.
change, *mūto*, *I*.
temper, *animus*.
former days, *tempus prius*, *sūpērius*.

Exercise 243.

drag down, *dētrāho*.
orator, *ōrātor*.
continue a war, *bellum dūco*, *produco*.
infringe upon, *dēmīnuo*.
serve as soldier, *stipēndia mēreo*
(*stipendium* = soldier's pay).

agree upon, *fix*, *constituo*.

refer, *rēfero*.

reject, *rējicio*, *respuo*.

be indignant with, *irascor*, *dat*.

Exercise 244.

endurance, *pātientia*.
plainly, *āpertē*, *plānē*.
approval, *consensus*, *-ūs*, *m*.
opinion, *sententia*.
express, *ēdo*, *fero*.
run risk of, *periculum subeo*.

Exercise 245.

depose from tribuneship, *abrōgare tribūnatum*, *dat*.
disaffected, mutinous, *sēdītiosus*.
with one consent, *consensu*.
loyal, *fīdēlis*.
prove false, *me infidelem praebeo*.

Exercise 246.

declare an enemy to the state, *hostem dēcerno*.
ask repeatedly, *rōgīto*.
threatening, *mīnax*.
senate house, *cūria*.

Exercise 247.

in our times, *his tempōribus*, *nostra aetate*.
artisan, *artifex*, *-icis*.
pile up, *congero*.
want (be without), *cāreo*, *abl*.
bloodshed, *cruor*, *-ōris*, *m*.
every year, *quōtannis*.
senators, *patres*.
carry (a law), *fero*.

Exercise 248.

gloomy, *tristis*, *fūnestus*.
utterly rout, *prōffigo*, *I*.
infirm, *infīrmus*, *invalidus*.

Exercise 249.

decisive, **haud anceps**.
 be brought to a successful issue,
prosp̄rē ēvēnīre.
 barren, **irritus**.
 be purchased at cost of, **stare, abl.**
 fastness, **castellum**.
 dear, **cārus**.

Exercise 250.

assured, **explōratus**.
 share with, **partior cum**.
 enriched, **auctus**.
 equally, **aeque, pārīter**.

Exercise 251.

recently, **nūper**.
 commonly, **vulgo**.
 steal, **abripio**.
 subject (*adj.*), **subjectus imperio**.
 dear friend, **conjunctissimus**.
 office, **hōnōres**.
 involve oneself in, **occurro, dat.**
 disgrace, **dēdēcus, -oris, n., igno-**
minia.
 tax, **vectīgal**.
 philosophy, **philosophia**.
 cure, **mēdeor, dat., sāno, I., acc.**

Exercise 252.

followers, **cōmites**.
 say farewell to, **jubeo aliquem**
vālēre.
 last necessity, **ultima nēcessitas**.
 loyalty, **fides, f. 5**.
 prosperity, **res prosperae**.
 adversity, **res adversae**.

Exercise 253.

principal officers. (See note, p. 55.)
 union, **consensus**.
 yield (*trans.*), **concedō**.

applause, **plausus, -ūs, m.**
 approve, **prōbo, I.**
 in battle array, **acie instructa**.
 dispute, **dēcerto de**.
 perilous moment, **discrimen**.

Exercise 254.

share, take part in, **particeps sum**
 (*gen.*).
 sail along, **lēgo, praetervēhor**.
 produce, **ēdo**.
 hold cheap, **parvi facio**.
 let go, **dimitto**.
 would that, **ūtīnam**.
 (1) *Present subj.* of future time.
 (2) *Imperfect subj.* of present
 time.
 (3) *Pluperfect subj.* of past time.
 contest, **certāmen**.
 watch, **specto, I.**

Exercise 255.

fully, **satis**.
 weak (of forces), **exīguus**.
 reef, **saxa, scōpūli**.
 success, **successus, -ūs**.
 ride, be at anchor, **in ancōris stare**.
 make his way in, **se insīnuare**.
 rashness, **tēmēritas**.
 dash against, **allido, -ēre, -si, -sum**.
 opposite to, **contra, ē regione, gen.**
 aghast, **obstūpefactus**.

Exercise 256.

tumultuous, **tumultuosus**.
 assailant, **oppugnator**.
 fortress, **castellum**.
 thicket, **virgultum**.
 bloody, **cruentus**.
 to be in a blaze, **ardēre**.
 wigwam, **cāsa**.

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

Ad.

<i>Gaul lies towards the north.</i>	Gallia vergit ad septentriones.
<i>A battle fought in the neighbourhood of Cannae.</i>	Pugna ad Cannas ¹ facta.
<i>About 10,000 soldiers.</i>	Ad decem milia militum.
<i>At a fit time, opportunely.</i>	Ad tempus.
<i>They advanced as far as the gate.</i>	Usque ad portam progressi sunt.
<i>On the right.</i>	Ad dextram.
<i>All without exception, all to a man.</i>	Omnes ad unum.
<i>Finally, at the extremity.</i>	Ad ultimum, ad extremum.
<i>To speak to the point, to good purpose.</i>	Ad rem loqui.
<i>For the purpose of keeping up hope.</i>	Ad spem servandam.

Apud.

<i>In the writings of Caesar.</i>	Apud Caesarem.
<i>At my house.</i>	Apud me.
<i>Among the Gauls.</i>	Apud Gallos.
<i>A speech delivered before the people.</i>	Oratio apud populum habita.

Secundum.

<i>To march along the banks of a river.</i>	Secundum flumen iter facere.
<i>To live in accordance with nature.</i>	Secundum naturam vivere.

Per.

<i>To ascertain by means of scouts.</i>	Per exploratores cognoscere.
<i>A man loved for his own merits.</i>	Vir per se ipsum amatus.
<i>It was owing to you that we did not cross the river.</i>	Per te stetit quominus flumen transiremus.
<i>I beseech you by the gods.</i>	Te per deos oro (or Per ego te deos oro).

¹ Distinguish carefully—Cannas = *to* Cannae.
 Cannis = *at* Cannae.
 Ad Cannas = *near* Cannae.

Sub.

<i>To winter under canvas, in tents.</i>	Sub pellibus hiemare.
<i>To halt at the foot of a mountain.</i>	Sub monte consistere.
<i>To send an army under the yoke.</i>	Exercitum sub jugum mittere.
<i>Towards evening.</i>	Sub vesperum.

Praeter.

<i>He led his forces past Caesar's camp.</i>	Praeter Caesaris castra suas copias transduxit.
<i>To speak beside the mark.</i>	Praeter rem loqui.
<i>To an extraordinary degree, unnaturally.</i>	Praeter modum.
<i>Beyond hope.</i>	Praeter spem.
<i>Contrary to expectation.</i>	Praeter opinionem.
<i>They have no clothing besides skins.</i>	Nihil vestitū praeter pelles habent.
<i>You do more than all the rest.</i>	Praeter ceteros laboras.

Super.

<i>Beyond all others.</i>	Super omnes.
---------------------------	--------------

Ab or ā.

<i>At a distance of 15 miles.</i>	A milibus passuum quindecim.
<i>In the rear, on the side, &c.</i>	A tergo, a latere.
<i>From sunrise till late in the day.</i>	Ab sole orto usque ad multum diei.
<i>Since the foundation of Rome.</i>	Ab urbe condita.
<i>He was on our side.</i>	A nobis stetit.

Cum.

<i>With the help of the gods.</i>	Cum dīs.
<i>To live virtuously.</i>	Cum virtute vivere.
<i>Some were tortured and put to death.</i>	Pars cum cruciatu necabatur.
<i>I have to deal with you.</i>	Tecum mihi res est.
<i>He wrote with care.</i>	Cum diligentia ¹ scripsit.

De.

<i>To throw oneself down from a wall.</i>	De muro se dejicere.
<i>About midnight.</i>	De media nocte.
<i>On purpose.</i>	De industria.
<i>Unexpectedly.</i>	De improviso.
<i>We are ruined, it is all up with us.</i>	Actum est de nobis.

¹ Or magna diligentia. If there is no epithet 'cum' must generally be used. See Voc. 89.

Ex or ē.

<i>To dismount.</i>	Ex equo desilire.
<i>To fight on foot or on horseback.</i>	Pedibus aut ex equis pugnare.
<i>In the course of a march.</i>	Ex itinere.
<i>Over against the town.</i>	E regione oppidi.
<i>After the consulship of Cotta.</i>	E Cottae consulatu.
<i>A man miserable after being happy.</i>	Homo miser ex beato.
<i>Since (of time).</i>	Ex quo.
<i>None of the barbarians.</i>	Nulli e barbaris.
<i>For the good of Gaul.</i>	Ex usu Gallorum.
<i>In accordance with the treaty.</i>	Ex foedere.
<i>Partly.</i>	Ex parte.
<i>Favourably, as we wish.</i>	Ex sententia.

Pro.

<i>Caesar led his troops before the camp.</i>	Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit.
<i>To be sure.</i>	Pro certo habere.
<i>To state as a fact.</i>	Pro certo ponere.
<i>Considering the size of the population.</i>	Pro multitudine hominum.
<i>With your usual prudence.</i>	Pro tua prudentia.
<i>To the best of one's ability, manfully.</i>	Pro virili parte.
<i>According to time and circumstances.</i>	Pro tempore et pro re.
<i>He was a father to me.</i>	Pro parente mihi fuit.
<i>Proconsul, praetor.</i>	Pro consule, pro praetore (<i>later as single word—Proconsul</i>).

Prae.

<i>He displayed a dagger.</i>	Prae se pugionem tulit.
<i>I made no secret of having done this.</i>	Hoc me fecisse semper prae me tuli.
<i>They seem cowardly in comparison with the Gauls.</i>	Prae Gallis ignavi videntur.
<i>I do not know where I am for joy.</i>	Prae gaudio nescio ubi sim. (<i>Only use prae in this sense with negatives or vix.</i>)

In.

<i>To make a bridge over a river.</i>	Pontem in flumine facere.
<i>To be under arms.</i>	In armis esse.
<i>At present.</i>	In praesenti.
<i>Our safety depends upon you.</i>	Salus nostra in te posita est.
<i>Daily, from day to day (of something increasing).</i>	In dies.
<i>For the future.</i>	In posterum, in futurum.
<i>In turn.</i>	In vicem.

SYNONYMS

- About** . . . (around, of place), **circum, circa**.
(of time or number), **circiter**, *adv. or prep.*
(of number), **ad**.
(= concerning), **de**.
- Again** . . . (general word), **rursus**.
(a second time), **iterum**.
(again and again), **saepenumero, identidem**.
- All** . . . (general word), **omnis**.
(with superlatives), **quisque**, *e.g. optimus quisque, all the best.*
(all together, implying connection), **cunctus, universus** ;
e.g. cunctus senatus.
(the whole, entire), **totus**, *e.g. tota provincia.*
- Ask** . . . (questions), **rogare, interrogare, quaerere (ex)**.
(requests), **rogare, petere (ab), poscere, postulare, orare, flagitare**.
Petere is most frequently used of a request addressed to a superior. *Poscere* and *postulare* imply a claim or demand, made as of right. *Orare* is 'to beg.' *Flagitare* is used of a vehement or importunate demand.
- Bear** . . . (carry), **ferre, portare, vehere**.
Vehere is most used of conveying by ship, carriage, or animals. *Equo vehi* = to ride ; *nave vehi* = to sail.
(endure), **pati, tolerare, ferre**.
Pati is the most general word. *Tolerare* is 'to put up with.' *Ferre* is 'to bear bravely.'
- Call** . . . (summon), **vocare, arcessere**.
(name), **nominare, appellare, vocare**.
(call to, accost, invoke), **appellare**.

- Each** . . . (of any number), **quisque**.
 (of two), **uterque**.
 (one by one, separately), **singuli**; *e.g.* **singulos interrogavit**, he questioned each separately.
- Fear** . . . (general word), **timere**.
 (often with the idea of respect), **vereri**.
 (dread, apprehend future evil), **metuere**.
 The nouns *timor*, *metus* correspond to their verbs.
Pavor is 'panic,' 'trembling with fear.'
- Find** . . . (a thing or person), **invenire**, **reperire**.
Reperire most often means finding something lost and searched for.
 (find out facts), **cognoscere**, **comperire**.
- Follow** . . . **Sequor** and compounds.
Consequor, **assequor** = come up with, reach.
Prosequor = escort.
Subsequor = follow close after, come next.
Persequor = follow up, follow to the end.
- Happen** . . . (generally of bad fortune), **accidit**.
 (generally of good fortune), **contingit**.
 (result, happen as result of something else), **evenit**.
- Kill** . . . (general word), **interficere**.
 (in fighting), **occidere**.
 (especially of hunger, poison, etc.), **necare**.
 (massacre, implying cruelty), **trucidare**.
 (murder), **jugulare**.

Know, Knowledge

- (know mentally, *e.g.* languages, sciences, etc. ; know how to do a thing), **scire**.
 (know persons), **novisse**.
 (learn facts), **cognoscere**, **comperire**.
 (perceive, learn by the senses), **percipere**, **sentire**.
 (understand), **intellegere**.
 (recognise persons or things known before), **agnoscere**.

The nouns *scientia* and *cognitio* correspond to *scire* and *cognoscere*; knowledge of persons is to be translated by *consuetudo*.

- Land** . . . (opposed to sea), **terra**.
 (a country, district), **regio, terra**.
 (lands), **agri, e.g. agros populatus est**.
 (native land), **patria**.
 (ground soil), **solum**.
- Last** . . . (furthest, *i.e.* first or last, of a series, in place or time),
ultimus, extremus; *e.g.* **extremum oppidum**
Allobrogum.
 (utmost, extreme), the same words; *e.g.* **ultimum supplicium**.
 (immediately preceding), **proximus**; *e.g.* **proxima nocte**.
 (latest), **novissimus**; *e.g.* **qui novissimus venit, necatur**.
- Lose** . . . (wilfully), **perdere**.
 (lose by carelessness, etc.), **amittere**.
 (let slip opportunity, etc.), **omittere, dimittere**.
- Man** . . . (human being, opp. to animals), **homo**.
 (opp. to women, children, cowards), **vir**.
- Mind** . . . (general words), **animus, mens**. **Animus** is more often
 used of the emotions, **mens** of the intellect.
 (talent, intellect), **ingenium**.
- More** . . . (comparing qualities or acts), **magis**; *e.g.* **magis consilio**
quam virtute.
 (comparing degree, quantity), **plus**; *e.g.* **valet salus plus**
quam libido.
 (rather, implying preference), **potius**; *e.g.* **consilium**
potius quam vis postulatur.
 (usually of time or number), **amplius**; *e.g.* **amplius horis**
quattuor.
- New, Old** . . . That which has lasted a long time is **vetus**, and opposed
 to **recens**, fresh, newly made.
 That which existed in former times is **antiquus**, and
 opposed to **novus**, new, not having previously existed.
- People, Race** (a 'nation' in the political sense), **populus**
 (a race, a people), **gens**.
 (a tribe, generally of distant, barbarous tribes), **natio**.
 Only use 'genus' for 'race' where it means 'family';
e.g. **nobili genere ortus**.
 'People' in the sense of 'men generally' (as in 'men
 say' 'on dit') is either omitted, or may be translated by
homines, especially where it means 'mankind generally.'

- Power** . . (legal, official power), **potestas**.
 (political power, not necessarily due to official position),
potentia.
 (influence, importance, often personal influence), **auctoritas**.
 (supreme magisterial or kingly power, especially from the
 military point of view), **imperium**.
 (dominion, sway), **ditio, potestas, imperium**; *e.g.* in
**potestate Populi Romani esse, to be subject to the
 Romans**.
 (royal power), **regnum**.
 (tyranny, absolute rule), **dominatus**.
 (physical power, strength), **vires**.
- See** . . . (general word), **videre**.
 (catch sight of), **conspicere, conspiciari**.
 (discern, see clearly), **perspicere, pres.** and *imp.* tenses of
cernere.
 (gaze at), **spectare, intueri**.
 For 'see' in the sense of 'understand' *cf.* 'Know.'
- Show** . . (display, hold out), **ostendere**.
 (show off, parade), **ostentare**.
 (point out, especially of facts, but also 'to point out a
 road,' &c.), **demonstrare**.
 (produce, bring out, show up), **exhibere**.
 (show qualities), **praestare**; *e.g.* **praestare virtutem, or
 se praeberere fortem**.
- Speak** . . (say something, express thought), **dicere**.
 (talk), **loqui**.
 (speak to, accost), **alloqui, appellare**.
 (address), **alloqui**.
 (make a speech), **orationem habere**.
- Take** . . (general word), **capere**.
 (take up, assume; *e.g.* **arma**), **sumere**.
 (undertake; *e.g.* **bellum**), **suscipere**.
 (take with the hand or arrest), **comprehendere**.
- Want** . . (be without), **carere**.
 (need), **egere, indigere** (or use **opus esse**).
 (wish for), **velle, cupere**.
 (to be wanting, to fail), **deficere**.
- Work** . . (labour, toil), **labor**.
 ('a work,' 'works'; most frequently the *result* of labour),
opus; *e.g.* **opera, military fortifications**.

Notice the following Verbs, which in English may be either Transitive or Intransitive.

	TRANSITIVE.	INTRANSITIVE.
Burn . . .	incendere, urere . . .	ardere.
Change . . .	mutare	mutari.
Collect . . .	colligere, cogere . . .	convenire.
Embark . . .	imponere in navem . . .	conscendere (in) navem.
Increase . . .	augere	crescere.
Join	conjungere	se conjungere cum.
Land	exponere in terram . . .	egredi e nave.
Leave	relinquere	abire, discedere.
Move	movere	se movere.
Return	reddere	redire.
Scatter	dispergere	dispergi.
Surrender . . .	tradere, dedere	se tradere, se dedere.
Trust	mandare, committere . . .	confidere, credere.
Turn	convertere	converti, se convertere.

MILITARY VOCABULARY

The Army. Men and Officers.

legion (largest number, 6000), legio.
cohort, regiment (tenth part of legion), cohors.
squadron (of cavalry), turma, ala (tenth part of turma).
company (of infantry), manipulus (= 200 men).
infantry, pedites, m. pl., peditatus, m. 4 (collective).
cavalry, equites, m. pl. equitatus, m. 4 (collective).
army in battle order or line, acies.
in marching order or column, agmen.
those of military age, juvenus (collective), qui arma ferre possunt.
light-armed troops (collective), levis armatura.
troops ready for battle, expediti.
heavy-armed troops, use legionarii.
archers, sagittarii.
slingers, funditores.
scouts, exploratores, speculatores.
recruits, tirones.
veterans, veterani.
reserves, subsidia.
reinforcements, supplementum, novae copiae.
auxiliary forces, auxilia (= allies and light-armed troops as opposed to the legion).

a large force, magnae (not multae), copiae.

a small force, exigua manus.

the flower of the troops, robur militum.

camp followers, calones.

non-commissioned officers (sergeants, etc.), centuriones.

captains, best translated centuriones.

colonels, best translated tribuni militum.

officers, general's staff, legati.

commander of cavalry, praefectus equitum.

general of division, legatus.

commander-in-chief, imperator.

the command-in-chief, summa imperii.

to appoint some one to chief command, summam imperii alicui deferre.

to give some one command of legion, aliquem legioni praeficere.

to be at the head of a legion, legioni praeesse.

Arms.

to take up arms, arma sumere, capere.

to make ready for battle, arma expedire.

to be under arms, in armis esse.

to lay down arms, ab armis discedere.

Arms—contd.

- to throw away arms, arma abjicere.
 by force of arms, vi et armis.
 missiles, tela.
 a shower of missiles, crebra tela, or magna vis telorum.
 to discharge, shoot, conijcere, mittere.
 to return fire, tela rejicere.
 within, out of range, intra, extra tell jactum.
 to draw a sword, gladium stringere.
 to sheath a sword, gladium in vaginam recondere.
 artillery (see under Siege)
 helmet, galea.
 shield, scutum.
 breastplate, lorica.
 sword, gladius.
 javelin, pilum.

Enlisting, Serving, Deserting.

- to enlist men, conscribere.
 to hold a levy, delectum habere.
 to take the oath of allegiance, in verba jurare alicujus.
 to serve a campaign, stipendia merere.
 to serve five years, quina stipendia merere.
 to review an army, recensere.
 to disband, dimittere.
 discharged (honourably), emeritus.
 to avoid military service, militiam detrectare.
 a deserter, perfuga, transfuga.
 to desert, transfugere, signa relinquere.
 mutiny, seditio.
 mutinous, seditiosus.

Camp.

- to choose a site for a camp, castra capere, locum castris (ad castra) idoneum deligere.

- to pitch camp, castra ponere, munire.
 to strike, castra movere, promovere (= advance), signa convellere.
 to leave undefended, castra nudare.
 to remain inactive in, castris se tenere, continere.
 winter, summer quarters [castra] hiberna, aestiva.

- sentinels, vigiliae, custodes, custodiae.
 to be on guard, keep watch, excubias (custodias) agere.
 watchword, signum, tessera.
 pickets, stationes.
 rampart, vallum, agger.
 to raise a rampart, vallum exstruere, facere.
 trench, fossa.
 to make a trench, fossam ducere.

The March.

- the vanguard, primum agmen.
 the rearguard, novissimum agmen, novissimi.
 to set out, proficisci.
 to march, iter facere, contendere.
 forced march, magnum iter.
 to advance, progredi, signa movere, signa ferre.
 with closed ranks, in order of war, agmine quadrato, confertis ordinibus (opposed to solutis ordinibus).
 to bring up the rear, agmen claudere.
 to build a road, viam munire.
 to have one's passage barred, itinere intercludi.
 to stop marching, iter intermittere.
 to change one's route, wheel, signa convertere.
 to halt, consistere.
 to station pickets at intervals, custodias disponere.

The March—contd.

- to reconnoitre*, explorare.
to cut off stragglers, palantes excipere.
to climb hill, superare collem.
to transport an army over a river, exercitum flumen trajicere.
baggage, impedimenta.
baggage animals, jumenta.

Commissariat.

- supplies*, commeatus (*sing.*).
corn, corn supply, frumentum, res frumentaria.
to forage, pabulari.
to get corn, frumentari.
to cut off the enemy's supplies, hostes commeatu intercludere, prohibere.
to look after corn supplies, rem frumentariam comparare, rei frumentariae providere.
to procure supplies, parare, suppeditare frumentum.
there are supplies in abundance, commeatus suppetit.
abundance of provisions, magna vis commeatus.

War. General Phrases.

- to proclaim war*, bellum indicere.
to make war upon, bellum inferre.
to wage war, bellum gerere (cum).
to prolong, drag on, bellum ducere.
to begin war, belli initium facere.
to finish war, bellum conficere, finem belli facere.
to renew the war, bellum redintegrare.
to conduct a war, bellum administrare.
to act on the defensive, bellum illatum defendere.
to rebel, revolt, deficere ab.
war materials, apparatus (*sing.*) belli.

Invasion, Inroad.

- to make an invasion, inroad*, incursionem, excursionem facere.
to ravage with fire and sword, omnia ferro ignique vastare.
to plunder, carry off booty, ferre atque agere praedam. (*N.B.*—ferre of inanimate things, agere of cattle. Cf. Greek φέρειν καὶ ἄγειν.)
to lay waste the country, agros vastare.

Conquest.

- to subjugate*, subigere, in potestatem redigere.
to keep in submission, aliquem in officio continere.
to remain in submission, in officio permanere.
submit, in ditionem venire, or in fidem ac potestatem se permittere.

Battle.**(I) GENERAL PHRASES.**

- to engage*, proelium committere, signa conferre.
to fight (with missiles) at a distance, eminus (telis, jaculis) pugnare.
at close quarters, hand to hand, comminus pugnare.
on foot, on horseback, pedibus, ex equis pugnare.
a skirmish, leve proelium.
a cavalry engagement, proelium equestre.
a battle fought near Cannae, proelium ad Cannas factum.
a pitched battle, justum proelium.
to fight a pitched battle, in acie dimicare, justo proelio contendere.
a drawn battle, aequo Marte (aequis conditionibus) pugnare.
a losing battle, fortunā inclinātā pugnare.
a decisive battle, proelio decertare.

Battle—contd.

the battle lasted till late in the day,
pugnatum est usque ad multum
diei.

to win, lose a fight, rem bene, male
gerere.

an indecisive battle, proelium anceps.

a favourable battle ,, secundum.

an adverse battle ,, adversum.

to be superior in numbers, numero
praestare, superiores esse.

to be inferior in numbers, numero
inferiores esse.

(2) BEFORE THE BATTLE.

to offer battle to the enemy, copiam
(potestatem) pugnandi hostibus
facere.

to provoke to battle, proelio (ad
proelium) lacessere, provocare.

to decline battle, proelium detrectare.

to give the signal to engage, signum
proelii (committendi) dare.

to draw up forces in battle order,
aciem instruere, copias acie in-
struere.

to extend the line, deploy, aciem
explicare.

to muster, ad signa convenire.

to harangue the men, contionari
apud milites, or use cohortari.

to encourage, embolden the men,
animos militum confirmare.

(3) DURING THE BATTLE.

to attack, aggredi, adoriri, signa
inferre (in).

the enemy in front, adversis
hostibus occurrere.

in the rear, hostes aversos (a
, tergo) aggredi.

to charge, impetum facere in (for
gen. dat. abl. plural use forms of
incurso instead of impetus).

at full speed, cursu (in hostes)
ferri.

at a gallop, citato equo.

to resist a charge, impetum sustinere.

to come to close quarters, manum
conserere, signa conferre cum
hoste.

to make an obstinate resistance,
hostibus strenue obstare.

to repulse the enemy, hostes pellere,
repellere.

the line wavers, acies inclinat,
inclinatur.

to form a square, orbem facere.

with close, serried ranks, conferti,
conglobati, confertis ordinibus.

*to break through the enemy's
centre,* per medios hostes per-
rumpere.

to dislodge, dejicere (de).

to renew the struggle, pugnam
redintegrare.

to restore the fortunes of the day,
proelium restituere.

to send up reserves, subsidia sum-
mittere (dat.).

*fresh troops relieve, come to help
of the tired men,* integri et
recentes defatigatis succedunt,
subveniunt.

to be hard pressed, premi, laborare.

to leave the ranks, ab signis disce-
dere.

affairs were in a critical condition,
res in summum (extremum) dis-
crimen adducta erat.

(4) AFTER THE BATTLE—ROUT,

RETREAT, PURSUIT.

to abandon position, loco excedere.

to sound the retreat, receptui canere.

to retreat, pedem, signa referre, se
recipere.

to rout, fundere, fugare.

to utterly defeat, rout, profligare.

utterly routed, fusi fugatique.

to put to flight, in fugam conjicere.

Battle—*contd.*

- to take to flight*, fugae se mandare, terga vertere.
to seek safety in flight, fuga salutem petere.
to fly for refuge, confugere (*ad.*) headlong flight, fuga effusa.
to pursue, sequi, persequi.
to overtake, assequi, consequi.
to press hard on fugitives, fugientibus instare.
to cut off the enemy's flight, fugientes excipere.
to let escape, hostes e manibus dimittere.

(DEFEAT.)

- to inflict defeat upon*, cladem inferre (*dat.*)
suffer defeat, cladem accipere.
to cause great slaughter, ingentem caedem edere.
to massacre, trucidare, stragem facere, stragem edere.
to cut up, annihilate, concidere, delere.
to be mortally wounded, vulnus mortiferum accipere.
to inflict a wound upon, vulnus infligere (*dat.*).
weakened, disabled by wounds, vulneribus confectus.
with great loss, multis amissis, magna strage.

(VICTORY.)

- victory, to win*, victoriam reportare, hostes proelio vincere.
let slip a sure victory, victoriam exploratam dimittere.
to raise a shout of victory, victoriam conclamare.
the victory cost much blood, victoria multo sanguine stetit.

the victorious army, exercitus victor, triumphant, use victor. (*N.B.*—triumphus is only used of the triumphal procession allowed by the state to a victorious general.)
a success, res bene (or prospere) gesta.

Siege.

- garrison*, praesidium.
a town with strong natural position, oppidum natura loci munitum.
commander, governor, praefectus.
to besiege, blockade, invest, obsidere.
to assault, oppugnare.
a siege, obsidio.
assault, oppugnatio.
to take by storm, expugnare, vi capere.
to reduce by starvation, fame domare.
to raise a siege (of relieving army), obsidione liberare.
to abandon a siege, obsidionem relinquere, obsidione desistere.
to raise siege works, opera facere.
to be busy with siege works, in opere versari.
to advance pent-houses, shelters, vineas agere.
to apply scaling ladders, scalas admovere.
battering ram, aries.
artillery, cannon, machinae, tormenta, ballistae.
to break through the lines, munitiones perrumpere.
to man the wall, murum cingere, complere.
to barricade the gates, portas obstruere.
to break down the gates, portas refringere.
a breach, nearest word ruina muri.
to make a breach, partem muri refringere.

Siege—contd.

to *undermine*, muros subruere, cuniculum facere.

to *drive defenders from the wall*, murum nudare defensoribus.

to *make a sally*, eruptionem facere, erumpere.

to *destroy, rase to ground a town*, oppidum evertere, funditus delere.

to *plunder*, diripere, spoliare.

provisions are running short, res frumentaria (cibus) deficit.

provisions hold out, suppetit comestus.

Surrender, Terms, Peace.

to *capitulate, surrender*, se dedere, in deditionem venire.

to *give up arms*, arma tradere.

to *receive the surrender of the enemy*, hostes in deditionem accipere.

(to *surrender*) at discretion, nullis latis conditionibus.

to *offer terms of surrender*, conditiones ferre.

favourable, hard, terms, aequae, iniquae conditiones.

to *treat for peace*, agere de pace.

to *bring about a peace*, pacem componere.

a *truce*, indutiae.

treaty, foedus.

to *make a*, foedus facere, ferre, icere.

according to a, ex foedere.

to *grant a man his life*, aliquem (incolumem) conservare.

their lives were spared, conservati sunt, or venia petentibus data est.

to *beg for one's life*, mortem deprecari.

to *exact hostages from the enemy*, obsides hostibus imponere.

Naval.

man of war, navis longa.

merchantman, transport, navis oneraria.

ram, beak, rostrum.

sails and rigging, vela et armamenta.

mast, mālus.

admiral, commander, praefectus classis.

rowers, remiges.

helmsman, pilot, gubernator.

to *embark*, (trans.), (milites) in navem imponere.

(intrans.), (in) navem conscendere.

to *disembark* (trans.), (milites) in terram exponere.

(intrans.), e nave egredi.

to *man a ship*, navem complere.

to *weigh anchor, set sail*, ancoram tollere, (navem) solvere, vela dare.

to *ride at anchor*, ad ancoram deligari, in ancoris stare.

to *drop anchor*, ancoram jacere.

to *sail out to sea*, navigare, in altum provehi.

to *sail along the coast*, oram legere.

to *sail with the wind behind*, vento secundo provehi.

to *round, double a promontory*, superare promontorium.

to *row*, navem remis propellere.

to *drift*, dejici, deferri.

to *bring to land*, (navem) appellere.

to *make land*, portum capere.

to *hold on one's course*, cursum tenere.

to *be shipwrecked*, naufragium facere, in litus ejici.

to *be wrecked, founder (of ship)*, frangi, deperire.

by *land and sea*, terra marique.

Naval—contd.

fleet, have a powerful, navibus plurimum posse.

to equip, (naves, classem) armare, instruere.

launch, deducere.

haul up, subducere.

repair, reficere.

build, construct, aedificare.

NAVAL BATTLE.

the admiral's ship, navis praetoria.

to fight a naval battle, proelium navale facere.

to clear the decks for action, navem expedire.

the fleets charge, classes concurrunt.
grappling irons, manus ferreae, copulae.

to board a ship, in navem transcendere, navem expugnare.

to sink a ship, navem submergere, deprimere.

to drive on shore, navem in litus agere.

to ram a ship, navem rostro percutere.

GENERAL VOCABULARY

This Vocabulary contains all the words given in the Vocabularies to the separate Exercises. It is meant to remind of forgotten words, but not to supply again constructions, genders, etc.

A

- abandon*, rĕlinquĕre.
ability, to the best of his a., pro virili parte.
able, to be, posse.
abound, ĭbundare.
about (number, etc.), circĭter, *adv.* (of, concerning), de, *prep.*
above, to mention, suprā commĕmōrare.
absent, to be, abesse.
accept, accĭpĕre.
acclamation, plausus.
accompany, cōmĭtari.
accomplish, effĭcĕre.
accomplishing anything, without, re infecta.
accord, of their own, sua sponte.
according to (of writers), apud, *prep.*
accordingly, so, ĭgitur (generally second word); itāque (first word).
account, on a, of, ob.
accuse, accūsare, insĭmŭlare.
accuser, accūsātor.
accustomed, sōlĭtus, assuĕtus.
accustomed to, assuĕtus ad.
to be, sōlĕre.
acquaintance (with persons), consuetudo; (with things), cognito.
- acquire*, acquĭrĕre, nancisci.
acquit, absolvĕre.
across, trans.
act, ĭgĕre, se gĕrĕre.
add, addĕre.
added, it is, accĕdit.
address, allōqui, contionari.
adjourn, (be dismissed), dĭmitti.
administer public affairs, rempublicam administrare.
admire, mĭrari.
admit, admittĕre.
 (confess), fātĕri.
adopt a plan, (inire or cāpĕre consilium).
advance, progrĕdi, prōcĕdĕre; signa ferre.
advantage, commōdum.
to be to the a. of, ex usu esse; usui esse.
adverse (fortune), adversus, inĭquus.
adversity, res adversae.
advice, consĭlĭum.
advise, suādĕre, mōnĕre. See Voc. 61 and Rule 12.
affection, ĭmor, stŭdĭum.
afraid, terrĭtus.
be afraid, tĭmĕre.
after, post, prep. and adv.; postea, *adv.*; postquam, conj.

- afterwards*, postea or post.
again, rursus.
 (*a second time*), iterum.
again and again, identidem, saepe-
 numero.
against one's will, invitus.
aghast, obstūpēfactus.
ago, abhinc. See p. 32.
agree upon (terms), constituere.
agreed, it is, constat.
agreement, come to an, consentire.
agriculture, agricultūra, agrorum
 cultus.
aid, auxiliūm.
aid, send to the, submittere, subsidio
 mittere.
aim at, pētēre.
alive, vivus.
all the best men, optimus quisque.
allow, sinere.
allowed, it is, licet. Voc. 128.
ally, socius.
almost, paene, fere, ferme.
alone, solus.
Alps, Alpes, *pl.*
already, jam.
also, etiam.
altogether, omnino (*only neg. sen-
 tences*).
always, semper.
amazed, to be, mirari.
ambassador, legatus.
ambuscade, insidiae.
amount, any, quantusvis, *adj.*
ancestors, majores.
anchor, to ride at, stare in ancoris.
 to weigh, ancoras tollere.
 to cast, ancoras jacere.
ancient, antiquus.
 in a. times, antiquitus (*adv.*).
anger, ira.
- angry*, iratus.
 be a. with, irasci.
 make angry, lacessere.
announce, nuntiare, referre.
annoyed at, to be, aegre ferre.
answer, respondere.
 answer, responsum.
anxious to, cupidus.
anyone. See p. 164.
Apollo, Apollo.
appear, apparere, videre.
appease, placare.
applause, plausus.
apple, malum.
appoint, creare.
appointed day, on the, die con-
 stituto.
approach, aditus.
 to, appropinquare.
 (*of time*), appetere.
approval, consensus.
 approve, probare.
archer, sagittarius.
arise, cooriri.
arm, armare.
armament (= fleet), classis.
arms, arma.
 arms, to take up, arma sumere.
 under arms, in armis.
army, exercitus.
arouse, excitare.
arrival, adventus.
arrive, advenire.
arrow, sagitta.
art, ars.
 of war, ars militaris.
artillery, tormenta, *n. pl.*
artisan, artifex.
as if, quasi, tanquam.
ascertain, cognoscere.
ashamed of, to be, pudet.

ask, ask for, rōgare, interrogare, quaerere, petere. See Synonyms.

ask repeatedly, rōgāre.

assail, assault, oppugnare.

assailant, oppugnator.

assassinate, trucidare.

assault (on town), oppugnatio.

assemble, tr. convocare;

intr. convēnere.

assembly (public), contio, concilium.

assert, affirmare.

assign, attribūere.

assist, adjūvare, subvēnire.

assume, ūsurpare.

assured (of things), exploratus.

astonished, miratus, attōnitus.

at. See Rule 6, p. 32.

at last, tandem.

Athenian, Athēniensis.

Athens, Athēnae.

attack (onset, charge), impetus (for *gen. dat. abl. plural* use forms of *incurso*).

to, aggrēdi, adoriri, impētum faciēre in; (of towns), oppugnare.

(of disease, etc.), afficere.

attempt, cōnari.

(battle), temptare.

attend to, cūrare, stūdere.

attire, ornātus.

augur, augur.

autumn, auctumnus.

avarice, āvāritia.

avenger, ulcisci.

avenger, ultor.

avoid, vītare.

await, expectare.

away, to be, abesse.

B.

back, tergum.

(adverb), retro.

bad, mālus, prāvus.

baggage, impēdimenta, *n. pl.*

band, mānus.

banish, expellere.

bank, rīpa.

barbarians, barbāri.

barren (profligate), irrītus.

base, turpis.

battle, proelium, pugna.

line of, ācies.

pitched, justum proelium; ācies.

there was a battle, pugnatum est.

fight a battle, proelium faciēre.

give battle to, proelium committēre cum.

draw up in battle array, (in) ācie instruere.

bear, ferre.

(of burdens), portare.

(endure), pati.

beard, barba.

beat, caedere.

beautiful, pulcher.

beauty, pulchritūdo.

because, quod, quia. See Rule 22.

become, fieri.

becoming, it is, dēcet.

bed, cūbile.

go to, cūbitum ire.

befalls, it, contingit (*generally good luck*); accidit.

before, ante, prep.; *antequam, priusquam, conj.* (Rule 25); *ante or antea, adv.*

before long, haud multo post.

beg, orare, precari.

begin, incipere, coeipisse.

beginning, initium.

behalf, on b. of, pro.

behave, se gere.

behind, pone.

behold (catch sight of), conspicere, conspici.

behoves, it, oportet.

believe, crēdere.
belonging to others, āllēnus.
benefit (*nn.*), bēnēficiūm.
 (*vb.*) prōdesse, usui esse.
beseach, obsecrāre.
beset, besiege, obsiċdere.
besides, praeterea.
besiege, obsiċdere.
bestow, dōnare.
betake oneself, se conferre.
betray, prōdere.
between, inter.
bill, rōgātio.
bind (*by an oath, etc.*), obstringere.
birth (*race*), gēnus.
bitterly, vēhēmenter.
blame, culpa.
 to, culpāre.
blind, caecus, ōcūlis captus.
block, obstruere.
blockade, obsiċdere.
blood, sanguis.
bloodshed, caedes, strāges.
bloody, cruentus.
blow, ictus.
board, to come on, conscendēre nāvem.
boat, linter.
boast, jactare, prae se ferre.
boastful, to be, glōriari.
body, corpus.
boldness, audācia.
book, liber.
booty, praeda.
borders, fines.
born, to be, nasci.
borrow, in aere alieno esse; aes alienum faciēre.
both, ambo, uterque.
 both . . . and, et . . . et.
bottom, imus.
bow, arcus.

boy, puer.
brave, fortis, vālidus.
 to show oneself, se praebere
 fortem.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtus, forlītūdo.
bread, pānis.
break, frangere.
 (*a law*), vīolare.
 (*a line*), inclināre.
down, dirūcere, rescindere.
through, perrumpere.
breeze, aura.
bribe (= money), pēcūnia.
bribery, ambitus.
bridge, to throw over a river, pontem
 in flumine faciēre.
bring (*of persons*), adducere.
 (*of things, news*), afferre.
 help, auxilium ferre.
broad, lātus.
brother, frāter.
build, aedificare.
burden, ōnus.
burden, to be a, ōneri esse. Voc. 85.
burdensome, mōlestus.
burn, intr., ardere.
 tr. (set fire to), incendere, urere.
bury, sēpēlire.
but, sed (first word), autem (second
 word).
 (= *except*), praeter, *prep.*; nisi,
 conj.
buy, emere.

C.

calamity, incommōdum, cālāmītas.
calculating, (thinking), rātus.
call, vocare. See Synonyms.
 together, convocare.
 (*by name*), appellare.

camp, castra, *n. pl.*
to keep in, castris tēnēre.
to pitch a, castra pōnēre.
to strike a, castra mōvere.

capable of, aptus ad.

capital (= *city*), cāput.

capitol, cāpitolium.

captive, captivus.

care for, *value*. See p. 48.

care, *carefulness*, dīlīgētia.

carefully, dīlīgēter.

careless, nēglīgēns.

carelessly, nēglīgēter.

carelessness, nēglīgētia.

carry, portare.
off, auferre, abripēre.
(of a law), ferre.

cart, carrus.

Carthage, Carthago.

Carthaginian, Poenus.
adj., Punicus.

castle, castellum.

Catiline, Cātilina.

catch, cāpēre.
sight of, conspīcēre, conspīcari.
up, consēqui.

cattle, pēcus.

cause (*be the cause of*), causae esse.
 Voc. 85.
(see to) cūrare (Voc. 149);
 efficēre ut.

caution, dīlīgētia.

cavalry, ēquitātus, *sing.*; equites, *pl.*

cavern, spēlunca.

cease, dēsīnēre.

celebrated, praecīlārus.
the celebrated Plato, Plato ille.

centre, mēdia pars.
(of line), mēdia ācies.

certain, a *certain* (= *the Indef. Article*), quidam.

certainly, certo; (*at least*), certe.

chance, by, fortē, cāsū.

change, mūtare.

character, mōres.

characters (*letters*), litterae.

charge (*accusation*), crimen.
(attack), impētus.
to, impētum fācēre in.

chariot, currus.

cheap, vilis.
to hold, parvi (mīnīmi) fācere,
 aestimare.

check, cōhībēre.

cheer, *to be of good*, bono ānīmo esse.

chieftain, princeps.

children, libēri (sometimes puēri).

choose, dēlīgēre.

circumstances, *under these*, quae
 quum ita sint, essent.
under the circumstances, ut in
 tali re.

citadel, arx.

citizen, civis.

city, urbs.

claim, ūsurpare.

clear, *it is*, liquet, manifestum est.

clearly, manifesto, certo.

cleave, discindēre.

clever, callidus, sollers.

cliff, rūpes.

climb, ascendēre.

cloak, pallium.
(military), sāgum.

close, claudēre.

close order, *in*, conferto agmīne.

close quarters, *at*, commīnus.

clothe, vestire.

clothes, vestis, vestītus.

cloud, nūbes.

club, clāva, fustus.

coast, ōra, litus.

cold, noun, frīgus.
adj., frīgīdus, gēlīdus.
collect, colligēre.
colony, cōlōnia.
colour, cōlor.
come, vēnire.
come out, ēgrēdi.
back, regrēdi, rēdire.
between, intercēdere.
down, descendere.
to the help of, subvēnire.
off victorious, ēvādēre victor.
upon, incidēre in.
command, impērare, jūbēre. See
 Voc. 61 and Rule 11.
be in command of, praeesse.
put into command, praeficēre.
chief command, summa impērii.
commander, praefectus. See p. 105,
 note 3.
commit, admittēre.
(to one's care), mandare alicui.
commonly, vulgo, plerumque.
or use constat.
companion, cōmes.
confel, cōgēre.
complain, quēri.
complete (victory), certus, haud
 dubius.
conceal, cēlare.
concerns, it, attinet ad, pertinet ad,
 rēfert, interest. See Voc. 109.
condemn, damnare.
to death, cāpītis damnare.
conditions, condītiōnes.
conduct, dūcēre.
conference, collōquium.
confess, confitēri.
confidence (= trust), fīdes, fīdūcia.
confusion, tūmultus.
throw into, perturbare.
connected with (by birth), cognātus,
 conjunctus nātū.

conquer, sūpērare, vincēre.
conqueror, victor.
consecrate, vōvēre.
consent, velle.
with one consent, consensu.
consider, cōgītare, rēpūtare, dēlibē-
 rare.
considering, rātus.
conspiracy, conjūratio.
conspirator, conjūratus.
conspire, conjūrare.
constancy, constantia.
construct, aedīficare.
consul, consul.
consulship, to stand for, consūlatum
 pētēre.
consult, consūlēre, dēliberare.
interests of, consūlēre. Voc. 61.
content, contentus.
contest, certamen.
continue, producēre.
continue to march, iter continuare.
contrary to, contra.
control (of campaign), summa im-
 pērii, or summa belli adminis-
 trandi.
convict, condemnare.
Corinth, Cōrinthus.
corn, frūmentum.
cost, stare. Voc. 57
council, concīlium.
counsel, consīlium.
countenance, vultus.
country (district), terra, rēgio.
(only when opposed to town), rus.
in the, rūri or rūre.
(native land), pātria.
courage, virtus.
to show, virtutem praestare.
course, to hold on his, cursum tēnēre.
cover, ōpērire.
(shelter), tēgēre.

coward, ignāvus.
cowardice, ignāvia.
credit, laus.
to be a, laudi esse. Voc. 85.
crime, scēlus.
criminal, nōcens.
crisis, discrīmen.
crop, sēges.
cross, transire, transjicere.
crowd, turba, multitudo.
crowd round, circumfundi.
crown, cōrōna.
cruel, saevus, crūdēlis.
cruelty, saevitia, crūdēlitas.
crush, prōfigare.
cry, clāmōr.
cry out, clāmāre.
(a cry was raised), clāmātum
 est, clāmōr sublatus est.

cultivate, cōlere.
cunning, *nm.*, sollertia; *adj.* sollers.
cup, pōcūlum.
cure, sānare, mēdēri.
custom, mōs.
according to, mōre.
customary, sōlītus.
customs, instītūta.
cut down, succidēre.
(kill), occidēre.
cut off, dēsēcāre.
cut in two, discindēre.

D.

danger, pēricūlum.
dangerous, pēriculōsus.
dash, audere.
dark, obscurus.
darkness, tēnebrae.
dash against (*tr.*), illidēre.
daughter, filia.
dawn, prima lux.
to, illūcescere.

day, dies.
space of two days, bīduum.
day, every, quōtīdie, in dies.
on the appointed, die constituto.
on the following, postēro die,
 postrīdie.
deadly wound, mortāle vulnus.
deaf, surdus, auribus captus.
dear, cārus.
death, mors.
to the, usquē ad mortem.
to condemn to, cāpītis damnare.
to face, mortem obire.
debt, aes aliēnum.
deceive, dēcipere.
decide, constituere.
(contest), rem dēcernere.
decisive, haud anceps.
declare, affirmare.
war, bellum indicere.
decree, edicere, dēcernere.
deed, factum.
(gen. with bad sense), fācīnus.
deep, altus.
defeat, clādes, incommōdum.
vō., vincere.
defend, dēfendēre.
defender, dēfensor.
defile, angustiae, fauces.
delay, mōra.
to, cunctari.
deliberate, dēliberare, consūlere.
delight (= joy), gaudium.
delightful, jūcundus.
deliver, trādere.
demand, postūlare, flāgitare, poscere,
 impērare. See Synonyms.
deny (*say not*), nēgare.
depart, abire, discedere.
(change homes), dēmigrare.
departure, prōfectio.
depend on, constare in, pōni in.

depose, abrogare imperium (tribūnātum) alicui.
deprive, prīvare.
descended, prognatus, ortus.
desert, (tr.) desērere, (intr.) transfūge.
 (revolt from), dēficere ab.
deserter, transfūga, perfūga.
deserve, mēreri, dignus esse. Rule 18, p. 110.
deservedly, mērīto.
design, consilium.
desire, stūdiū, cūpido.
 to, cūpere.
desirous, cūpidus.
desist from, dēsistere.
desolate, dēsertus.
despair, spem abjicere.
 in, re, or salute desperata.
despatches, litterae.
desperate, perditus.
despise, despīcere, spernere, contemnere.
destroy, dēlere.
destruction, to be, or mean, exitio esse.
 Voc. 85.
detain, rētīnere.
deter, dēterrere.
determination, constantia.
determine, statuere, constituere.
devoid of, vācuus, nūdātus.
devoted to, to be, stūdere.
devotion, stūdiū.
dictator, dictātor.
die, mōri.
differ, inter se differre.
 greatly from, multum distare ab.
difference, to make a, interesse, referre. Voc. 109.
different from, alius ac.
difficult, difficilis.
difficulty, difficultas.

dig up, effōdere.
diligence, dilligentia.
diligently, dilligenter.
diminish, dīminuere.
directions, in all, passim, in omnes partes.
 from all, undīque, ex omnibus partibus.
disabled, confectus.
disaffected, sēdītiosus.
disaster, clādēs.
disastrous, infēlix, fūnestus.
disband, dīmittēre.
discipline, dīscīplina.
discover, invēnīre, rēpērire.
 See Syn., find.
 (of facts), cognoscere, comperire.
discretion, at, nullis conditionibus latis, acceptis.
discuss, dīssērere de.
disease, morbus.
disembark (trans.), expōnere.
 (intr.), e nave egrēdi. Voc. 131.
disgrace, dēdēcūs, ignōminia.
 to, dēdēcōri esse. Voc. 85.
disgraceful, turpis.
disheartened, mētū commōtus.
dishonour, dēdēcōrare, dēdēcōriēsse.
 Voc. 85.
disliked, to be, ōdio esse. Voc. 85.
dismay, pāvōr.
dismayed, pāvōre percussus.
dismiss, dīmittēre.
disobey (an order), negligēre.
disorder, tūmultus.
disorderly, tūmultuarius.
display (a quality), praestare.
displease, displicere.
disposition, mens, indoles.
dispute, dēcertare de.
 (in conversation), dīssērere de.
distance, at a, prōcul, ēmīnus.

distant, longinquus.
to be, abesse.
distinguished, insignis.
district, rēgio.
disturb, turbare.
disturbance, tūmultus, mōtus.
ditch, fossa.
divisions, in two, bipartīto.
do one's utmost to, id āgēre ut.
dominion, impēriū. See Syn.,
power.
 (*with idea of tyranny*), dōmī-
 natus.
door, porta, jānuā.
doubt, dūbitare. Rules 16, p. 88;
 23, p. 130.
 (*without*), sīne dūbio.
doubtful, to be, incertum, dūbium
 esse.
downwards, deorsum.
drag, draw, trāhēre.
draw up, instruēre.
dread, formīdo.
dream, somnium.
to, somniare, somnio vīdēre.
dress, ornatus.
drink, bībēre.
drive, āgēre.
out, expellēre.
drive down, or away, depellēre.
back, rēpellēre.
drown, submergēre.
duc, it is due to you, per te stat
 (p. 132).
duly, officiūm.
it is one's, oportet.
 dwell in, habitare in, incōlēre.

E.

eager, āvidus.
eagerness, stūdiūm.
early (in the morning), mānē.
 (*in good time*), mātūrē.

earn, mērēre.
easily, fācīle.
east, sōlis ortus, ōriens.
easy, fācīlis.
eat, ēdēre.
effect, effīcēre.
effort, lābor, cōnātus.
egg, ōvum.
Egypt, Aegyptus, f.
elated, ēlatus.
elders, patres.
elect, crēare.
evidence, testīmonium.
elephant, ēlēphantus.
eloquence, ēlōquentia.
embark (trans.), imponēre.
 (*intr.*), (in) navem conscendēre.
 Voc. 131.
emperor, impērātor.
empire, impēriūm.
employ, ūti.
encamp, considēre, castra pōnēre.
encourage, hortari, admōnēre.
end, finis.
bring to an end, confīcēre,
 finire.
endowed, praeditus.
endurance, pātientia.
enemy (private), īnīmicus.
 (*public*), hostis.
energy, stūdiūm.
engage in battle, proelium com-
 mittēre.
engagement, certāmen.
England, Brītanīnā.
Englishman, Brītanīnus.
enjoy, frui, ūti.
enough (quite), sātīs.
enquiry, hold an, quaestiōnem
 hābēre de.
enraged, irātus.

enter, ingrēdi, intrare.
enthusiasm, stūdiū, ardor.
entice, ēlicēre.
entrance, ōs, ostium, ādītus.
entrust, committēre, mandare.
envoy, lēgātus.
envy, invidiā.
to, invidēre.
equal, par.
 (*favourable, or fair*), aequus.
 (*of the same age, contemporary*),
 aequalis.
on equal terms, aequo Marte,
 aequa contentione.
equally, aequē, pārter.
equip, pārare.
err, errare.
escape, fūga.
to, effūgēre.
especially, praesertim.
esteem. See Voc. 57.
even, ētiam.
not even, ne . . . quidem.
evening, in the, vespēri.
towards, sub vespērum.
ever, unquam. See p. 165.
 (= *always*), semper.
every day, quōtidie.
everywhere, ūbique.
evidence, to give, testimōnium dīcere.
evident, mānifestus.
evil, mālum.
exact from, impērare (*dat. and acc.*).
example, to be an, exemplo esse.
 Voc. 85.
excessive, nīmius.
excel, sūpērare.
excellent, ēgrēgius.
except, praeter, *prep.*; nīsi, *conj.*
excite, excitāre.
exclaim, clāmāre.

exhausted, confectus (lābōre, etc.).
exhort, hortari, admōnēre.
exile, exsiliū.
an, exsul.
expect; expectare.
expectation, contrary to, praeter
 spem, ōpinionem.
expedient, it is, expēdit.
expel, expellēre.
experience, peritīa.
experienced in, expertus, pēritus.
explain, expōnēre, ēdēre.
explore, explōrare.
expose (trans.), objicēre.
oneself to, se objicere, occurrēre.
express, ēdēre.
extent, to a great, magna ex parte.
eye, ōculus.

F.

face, vultus.
face death, mortem ōbire.
fail, dēficēre.
faint-hearted, tīmīdus.
fair, aequus.
faithful, fidēlis.
faithfully, fidēliter.
fall, cādēre.
 (*of a city*), cāpi.
fall down, dēlābi.
into or upon, incidēre in.
to the lot of, contingēre.
 See 'befall.'
false, falsus.
falsely, falso.
family, fāmīlia.
famine, fāmes.
far, longe.
too far, longius.
far as, as, usquē ad.
far off, prōcul.
farewell, say, jūbēre vālēre.

farm, fundus.
farmer, cōlōnus.
fashion of, in the, mōre.
fastness, castellum.
fatal, funestus.
fate, fortūna, fātum.
fated, fātālis.
father, pāter.
fatherland, patria.
fault (blame), culpa.
favour, fāvēre.
favourable (of things), sēcundus,
 idōneus.
fear, timor, mētus. See Syn.
to, timēre, mētūere. Rule 21,
 p. 120.
(with idea of respect), vērēri.
through fear of this, hoc timore.
feast, ēpūlae.
to, ēpūlari.
feed, vesci.
feel, sentire.
feign, simūlare.
fellow-citizen, fellow-countryman,
 cīvis.
fertile, fertilis.
few, pauci.
field, āger.
of battle, ācies.
take the, militēs ēdūcēre.
fierce, fērox.
fiercely, fērōciter.
fight a battle, proelium fācēre.
with, pugnare contrā.
in the army, stipendia mērēre;
 sometimes mērēre alone.
fighting order, in, acie (instructa).
fill, complēre, replēre.
finally, dēnīque.
find. See 'discover.'
fine, mulctare.

finish, conficēre.
(accomplish), perficēre.
fire, ignis.
set on, incendēre.
back, tēla rējicēre.
first, at, primō.
fit out, instruēre.
for, aptus ad, idōneus ad.
to be, dignusqui. Rule 18, p. 110.
flame, flamma.
flank, lātus.
on the, ab lātēre.
fleet, classis.
flight, fūga.
put to, fundēre, fūgare.
take to, tergā vertēre, se fūgae
 mandare.
flock, grex.
flow, flūere.
flower, flōs.
of army, rōbur.
flushed (elated), elatus, sublatu.
fly, fūgēre.
follow, sēqui (and compounds).
following (of time), proxīmus.
follows, as, ita, ad hunc modum.
fond of, cūpīdus.
food, cībus.
foolish, stultus.
foot, pēs.
on, pēdībus.
footsoldier, pēdes.
*for, nam (first word), enim (second
 word).*
for the sake of, pro.
forage, frūmentum, pābūlum.
to, frūmentari, pābūlari.
forbid, vētare.
force, cōgēre.
nn. vis.
by force of arms, vi et armis.
forces, cōpiae.
land, copiae terrestres.

foreign, externus.
foresee, prōvidēre.
forest, silva.
foretell, praedicere.
forget, oblivisci, immemor esse.
forgive, ignoscere.
form, figurā.
 a plan, consilium capere, inire.
former, superior, prior.
 the former . . . the latter, ille
 . . . hic.
formerly, antea.
formidable, gravis, metuendus.
fortifications, munitimenta.
fortify, munire.
fortress, castellum.
fortunate, felix.
fortunately, feliciter, prospere.
fortune, fortuna.
 (*generally bad*), casus.
forum, forum.
found, condere.
fountain, fons.
France, Gallia.
free, liber.
 from, vacuus, expers.
 to free, liberare.
freedman, libertus.
freedom, libertas.
French, Gallicus.
Frenchman, Gallus.
frequently, saepe.
fresh, integer.
 (*recent*), recens.
friend, amicus.
friendship, amicitia.
frighten, terrere.
front, in, a fronte.
fruit, fructus.
fugitive, profugus.
 (*gen. of slaves*), fugitivus.

full, plenus.
furnish, praebere.
further, longius, ultra.
fury, furor.

G.

gallant, fortis.
Galic, Gallicus.
game, ludus.
 hold games, ludos celebrare.
garden, hortus.
garment, vestimentum, vestis.
garrison, praesidium.
gate, porta.
gather, colligere.
Gaul, Gallia.
Gaul, a, Gallus.
gaze at, spectare, intueri.
general, dux. See p. 105, note 3.
 commander-in-chief, imperator.
 general's tent, praetorium.
generally, vulgo.
geniality, comitas.
German, Germanus.
get out of (escape), evadere.
gift, donum, munus.
give, dare.
 up, tradere, dedere.
 ground, cedere loco.
give up hope, spem abicere.
give opportunity, dare occasionem,
 facere potestatem. Voc. 100.
glad, to be, gaudere. Rule 22, p. 124.
gladly, libenter.
gloomy, tristis.
glory, gloria, decus.
gloriously, summa laude.
go, ire, se conferre.
 away, discedere, abire.
 back, regredi, redire.
 out, egradi.
 well, prospere evenire.

god, deus.

going on, to be, pass. of āgĕre.

gold, aurum.

golden, aureus.

good for, to be, prōdesse.

ex usu } esse.
usui }

goods, bōna, n. pl.

govern, rĕgĕre, administrare.

government, the, ii qui reipublicae praesunt, ii qui rempublicam administrant, māgistratūs.

governor, of a province, proconsul.

grant, dāre, mandare, trādĕre.

greatly, magnōpĕre.

greet, sālūtare.

Greece, Graecia.

Greek, Graecus.

language, lingua Graeca.

green, viridis.

grief, dōlor.

groan, gĕmĭtus.

ground, hūmus (see p. 32), terra.

to hold one's, in loco perstare
(sometimes translate by rĕsistĕre or sustinĕre).

grudge, invīdia, dōlor.

grumble, quĕri:

guard, custos.

off one's, imprōvidus, incautus.
to, custōdire.

guest, hospes.

guide, dux.

guilty, nōcens.

guise of, in the, mōrĕ, pro.

gulf (bay), sĭnus.

H.

halt, consistĕre.

hand, mānus.

in hands of, in pōtestate.
to be at, adesse.

hang, tran., suspendĕre.

intran., pendĕre.

happens, it, accidit.

happy, fĕlix, beatus.

harass, lācessĕre.

harbour, portus.

hard, difficĭlis.

hardly, vix, aegre.

hardship, lābor.

harm, mālum, damnum.

harvest, messis.

hasten, prōpĕrare, festinare.

hateful to, to be hated by, ōdio esse.

Voc. 85.

hatred, ōdium.

havoc, strāgĕs.

head, cāput.

heal, mĕdĕri, sānare. Voc. 61.

healthy (of persons), sānus, vālĭdus.
(*of places*), sālūber.

hear, audire.

heat, cālor.

heavy, grāvis.

height, altĭtūdo.

helmet, gālea.

help, auxiliium.

to, jūvare, succurrĕre, subvenire.

Voc. 61.

to be a, auxiliō, subsidiō esse.

here, hĭc.

(*implying motion*), hūc.

hesitate, dūbitare.

hide, cĕlare, condĕre.

high, altus.

higher, sūpĕrior.

highway, via.

hill, collis.

hinder, impĕdire, obstare.

historian, scriptor rerum.

hitherto, adhuc.

hold, tĕnĕre.

hold out (of supplies), suppĕtĕre.
 (= resist), rĕsistĕre.
on one's course, cursum tĕnĕre.
one's ground, rĕsistĕre, in lōco
 perstare.
 (*occupy*), occūpare.
hold command, impĕrium obtĭnĕre.
hold cheap, parvi, mĭnĭmi aestĭmare.
holy, sĕcere.
home, dōmus. See p. 32.
homes, pĕnĕtes (*household gods*),
 or fōci (*hearths*).
honour, honor.
honour, for the sake of,
 hōnōris causā.
honourable (of persons), prōbus.
 (*of things*), hōnestus
hope, spēs.
 to, spĕrare.
give up, spem abjicĕre.
horse, ĕquus.
horse-soldier, ĕquĕs.
hospitality, hospĭtium.
host, hospĕs.
hostage, obsĕs.
hour, hōra.
house, dōmus, or pl. of aedes. ✓
household, fāmĭlia.
how, quam.
 (*in what manner?*), quōmōdo,
 quemadmodum.
great? quantus.
long? quamdiu.
many? quot, indecl. adj.
often? quōties.
however, tĕmen.
humour, mōrem gĕrĕre.
hunger, fĕmes.
hungry, to be, ĕsūrĭre.
hurl, jĕcĕre, injĕcĕre.
hurry, festinare, prōpĕrare.
hurt, laedĕre, nōcĕre. Voc. 61.
husband, vir, mĕritus.

I.

idle, ignāvus.
ignorance, inscientia.
ignorant of, inscius, impĕritus.
ill, aeger.
 to be, aegrōtare.
 take, aegre ferre.
imagine, rĕri.
immediately, stĕtĭm.
immense, ingens.
importance, to be of, interesse, rĕferre.
 Voc. 109.
impose tribute, impōnĕre tribūtum.
impossible, it is, fieri non pōtest
 (quin).
impregnable, inexpugnabilis.
impression on, to make, commōvĕre.
incite, addūcĕre.
increase (trans.), augĕre; (*intrans.*),
 crescĕre.
incur, subire.
incursion, to make an, incursionem
 fĕcĕre.
indeed, quĭdem.
 (*really*), rĕvĕrĕ.
 (*at least*), certe, saltem.
independence, libertas.
indignant, to be, irasci.
indignation, ira, dōlor.
induce, to, addūcĕre.
inexperienced. See 'ignorant.'
infantry, pĕditatus (*sing.*), pĕdĭtes
 (*plu.*).
inferior, infĕrior.
infirm, infirmus.
inflict on, afficĕre (*acc. of person*,
abl. of thing), inferre (*dat. of*
person, acc. of thing).
influence, auctōritas.
 to have very great, plurimum
 vālĕre.
inform, certĭorem (aliquem) fĕcĕre.

infringe upon, dēminuēre.

inhabit, incolēre.

inhabitants, incolāe.

(of a town), oppidāni.

(of city), cives.

injure, laedēre, nōcēre. Voc. 61.

injury, injūria, damnum.

innocent, insons, innocens.

insolence, arrōgantia, sūperbia.

inspire, to, injicēre (acc. of thing,
dat. of person).

instead of, lōco.

insult, contūmēlia, injūria.

intend, to, in animo habēre.

intend, I, mihi in animo est.

intention (with the intention of),
eo consilio ut.

interior, pars intērior.

invade, incursionem faciēre in,
invādēre.

invasion, incursio.

invite, to, invitare.

involved in, to be, occurrēre.

Ireland, Hibernia.

Irish, Hibernicus.

Irishman, Hibernus.

iron, ferrum (adj. ferreus).

island, insulā.

issue, ēventus, exitus.

J.

jealousy, invidia.

jest, jocus.

join, to, trans., conjungēre; *intrans.*,
se conjungēre cum.

journey, iter.

joy, gaudium, laetitia.

joyful, laetus.

judge, jūdex.

Jupiter, Juppiter.

just as, just as much as, aequē ac,
haud ālīter ac. Rule 30, p. 178.

justify, excūsare.

K.

keep, conservare.

(observe), cōlēre.

(one's word), fidem praestare.

key, clāvis.

kill, interficēre.

(cut down) occidēre.

(murder), necare.

(massacre), trucidare.

kind, sort, gēnus.

kind, bēnignus.

kindly, adv. benigne.

kindness, bēnignitas, hūmānitas,
bēnēvolentia.

act of kindness, beneficium.

king, rex.

kingdom, regnum.

kingly, rēgius.

kingly power, regnum.

knight, ēques.

know, scire. See Syn.

(ascertain), cognoscēre.

not to, nescire.

it is well known, constat.

knowledge (of things), cognitio.

(of persons), consuetudo.

L.

labour, lābor.

lack, to, cārēre. See Syn., 'want.'

ladder, scāla.

laden, ōnēratus.

land, trans., expōnēre; *intrans.*, e
nave egrēdi.

land, āger, patria. See Syn.

landing, egressus.

last, proximus.

at, tandem.

last, to the, ad extrēmum.
late at night, multā nocte.
till late in the night, ad multam noctem.
too, sēro.
lately, nūper.
latter, hic (*opp.* to ille).
launch, dēdūcēre.
law, lex.
pass a, legēm. jūbēre.
propose a, lēgem ferre.
law of nations, jus gentium.
contrary to, contra jus gentium.
lawful, fas, *indecl. or use licet*.
lay down, dēpōnēre.
lead, dūcēre.
leader, dux.
lead back, rēdūcēre.
out, ēdūcēre.
round, circumdūcēre.
aside, dēdūcēre.
learn, discēre.
(ascertain), cognoscēre, compērire.
least, at, certe, saltem.
leave, rēlinquēre.
leave one's post, loco cēdēre.
leave behind, rēlinquēre.
leave, by your, pāce tua.
legion, lēgio.
legionary, lēgiōnārius miles.
leisure, ōtiūm.
lend, mandare.
length, at, tandem.
lessen, dēmīnuēre.
let, allow, sūnēre.
let down, dēmīttēre.
let go, dīmīttēre, ōmittēre.
letter, ēpistola, littērae.
levy, hold a, dēlectum hābēre.
liable to, obnoxius.

liberate, libērare.
liberty, libertas.
lie, jācēre.
(speak falsely), mentiri.
lieutenant (general), lēgātus.
life, vīa.
light, lux.
like, sīmīlis.
line of battle, ācies.
lines (of army), mūnitiones.
listen, audire (*pārere*).
litter, lectica.
little, parvus, exīguus.
little, a, paulum.
(with comp), paulo.
too, pārūm, *adv. (used as noun with partitive gen.)*.
for a little time, paulisper.
little by little, paulātīm.
live (exist), vivēre.
live in, hābitare in, incōlēre.
long, longus.
(of time only), diuturnus.
(for a long time), diu, *adv.*
(now for a long time), jampridem, jamdūdum. See p. 155, n. 1.
(as long as), dōnec, quoad. Rule 25. p. 140.
(=provided that), dum, dummodo. Rule 27, p. 146.
look after, cūrare.
looks (expression), vultus.
lose (let slip), āmittēre.
(wilfully), perdēre. See Syn.
lose heart, animum dēmīttēre.
loss, incommōdum, damnum.
with great (of a battle), maxima strāge, or multis amissis.
lost, to be, "actum est de" = *it is all over with*.
lot, sors.

loud, use magnus.
 love, amare, diligere.
 loyal, fidelis.
 loyalty, fides, fidelitas.
 luxury, luxus.

M.

mad, insanus.
 to be, fūrere.
 magistrate, māgistratus.
 maidens (servants), mīnistrae,
 fāmūlae.
 maimed, saucius.
 main road, via.
 mainly, imprīmīs.
 majority, major pars, with part.
 gen., plērique, adj. pl.
 make (cause that), effīcere ut (final).
 trial of, expēriri, temptare.
 man (human being), hōmo.
 (individual of male sex), vir.
 to a, ad unum.
 to man, vb., complere.
 manner, mōdus.
 (custom), mos.
 many, multi.
 times (larger), multis partibus.
 how, quot, indecl. adj.
 march, iter.
 to, iter facere, contendere.
 a forced, magnum iter.
 on the, in or ex itinere.
 to continue, iter continuare.
 marry (woman as subject), nūbere.
 (man as subject), dūcere, Voc. 61.
 marsh, pālus.
 marvellous, mīrus.
 massacre, caedes.
 master (of pupils), māgister.
 (of slaves), dōmīnus.
 of the horse, māgister ēquītum.
 match for, par.

matters a great deal, it, multum, or
 magni interest. Voc. 109.
 mean, velle dicere.
 (indicate), significare.
 means (manner, way), mōdus.
 by this, ita.
 by no, haudquāquam.
 meanwhile, intērim, intērea.
 meet, obviam ire, dat.
 (obtain), nancisci.
 meeting, concilium, conventus.
 mention above, to, supra commēmō-
 rare.
 mercenaries, mercēnārii mīlites.
 merchandise (merx), pl., merces.
 message, nuntius.
 messenger, nuntius.
 middle, mēdius. See note, p. 5.
 might, with all one's, summā vi.
 mile, mille passūs.
 miles, two, duo millia passuum.
 mind, ānīmus.
 (intellect), mens. See Syn.
 with minds made up, obstīnatis
 ānīmis.
 mindful, mēmor.
 misfortune, cālāmītas, mālum.
 moat, fossa.
 mob, turba, multītūdo.
 mock, irrīdēre.
 modern times, in, his tempōribus.
 money, pēcūnia.
 month, mensis.
 moon, lūna.
 moreover, praetērea.
 (= now, continuing a narrative),
 autem.
 morning, in the, māne, indecl. abl.,
 only.
 mortal (subject to death), mortālis.
 (causing death), mortifer.
 most, plērique, adj.

mother, māter.
mound, tūmūlus, agger.
mountain, mons.
mouth, os.
 (entrance), ostium, aditus.
move, mōvēre.
 (affect), commōvēre.
much, just as much as, aequē ac.
 too much, nimius, adj., nīmium
 (used as noun), nīmīs, adv.
mule, mīlus.
multitude (great number), multītūdo.
 (common people), plebs.

N.

name, nōmen (by name, named, nōmine).
narrow, angustus, artus.
nation, gens. See Syn., 'people.'
naval, nāvālis.
near, prōpe.
near, to be, adesse.
nearly, paene, fērē.
nearest, proximus, followed by acc.,
 -dat., or ab with abl.
necessary, nēcessarius.
necessity, nēcessitas.
neck, collum, cervīces.
need, ēgēre, indīgēre. Voc. 134.
 (be without), cārēre.
needs money, he, opus est ei pēcūniā.
neglect, negligēre.
negligence, negligētia.
neighbour, neighbouring, vicīnus,
 finītīmus.
never, nunquam.
nevertheless, tāmen, nīhīlōmīnus.
new, nōvus. See Syn.
 (=fresh), rēcens.
news, nuntius.
 what? quid nōvi?
 to bring, afferre, rēferre.

next, proxīmus.
night, nox.
 by, noctu.
 until late in the, ad multam
 noctem.
noble, nōbīlis.
nobody, no one, nēmo (adj. nullus).
none the less, nīhīlōmīnus.
noon, mēridies.
north, septentriones, pl.
not only . . . but also, non solum
 . . . sed etiam.
not yet, nondum.
nothing, nīhil.
notice, animadvertēre.
now, jam.
 (at present time), nunc.
 (continuing narrative), autem.
nowadays, his tempōribus.
now for a long time, jamprīdem,
 jamdūdum. See p. 155, note I.
number, nūmērus, only singular.
 a great number, multitudo.
nymph, nymphā.

O.

oath, jusjūrandum.
obey, to, pārēre.
object was, his, id egit ut.
observe (keep), cōlēre.
 (notice), ānimadvertēre.
obstacle, difficultas.
obstinacy, pertinācia.
obstinate, pertinax.
obstinately, obstinate.
occupy, occūpare.
off (promontory, etc.), contra.
offence, noxa, dēlictum.
offend, offendēre, acc., displicēre,
 dat.
offer, offerre.

office (of state), hōnor.
officer, praefectus, lēgātus. See note on p. 55.
often, saepe.
as often as, quōties. See Rule 25, p. 140.
old (that has lasted a long time), vētus. See Syn.
(belonging to former times), antiqus.
old man, senex.
10 years old, etc. See p. 32.
older, nātu major.
once (upon a time), āliquando, olim.
at once, stātim.
one . . . another (of several), alius . . . alius.
the one . . . the other (two contrasted), alter . . . alter.
on one side . . . on the other, ab altera parte . . . ab altera.
with one another, inter se.
one in ten, decimus quisque, lit., each tenth man.
only, solum, tantum, mōdo.
onset, impētus.
open, āpertus.
to, āpērire.
to be, pātēre.
throw open, patēfacēre.
openly, āperte.
opinion, sententia.
to give an, sententiam ferre.
opportunity, fācultas, lōcus, occāsio.
to give an, dare occasionem, fācere potestatem, gen. Voc. 100.
should an opportunity offer, dātā occāsione.
oppose, obstare, obsistēre, rēsistēre.
opposite to, contra, e regione.
opposite (bank, etc.), alter.
oppress, to, vexare, opprīmēre.

oracle, ōrācūlum.
orator, ōrātor.
ordain to, ēdicēre.
order, discīplīna.
to lose, ōmittēre discīplīnam.
(in close), confertus, conferto agmīne.
order (command), iussum.
by order of, iussu.
without the order of, injussu.
(vb.) command, jūbēre, impērare.
origin, ōrigo.
others (all others), cētēri, rēliqui.
other people, belonging to, āliēnus.
otherwise than, ālīter ac. Rule 30, p. 178.
ought, dēbēre.
outpost, stātio.
outside, extra.
overcome, sūpērare.
(with fear, etc.), percussus.
overtake, assēqui, consēqui.
overthrow, sternēre, prosternēre.
owe, dēbēre.
it is owing to you, per te stat (p. 132).
ox, bos.

P.

pace, passus.
pacify, pācare.
pain, dōlor.
palace, rēgia.
panic, pāvōr.
pardon, vēnia.
to, ignoscēre.
parent, pārens.
part, pars.
part in, to take, interesse.
particularly, praeter omnes.
partly . . . partly, partim . . . partim.
pass, saltus, angustiae.
spend, āgēre.
by, praetērēre.

- past*, praetēritus.
the, praeterīta, n. p.
path (byway), trāmes.
patiently, aequo ānīmo.
pay, stipendium.
to, solvēre.
- peace*, pax.
peasant, agrīcōla, rustīcus.
penalty, poena.
undergo, poenam sūbire.
people (population, nation), pōpūlus.
 See Syn.
 (*persons*), homines.
 (*common*), plebs, vulgus.
- perceive*, sentire.
perform, fungi.
perhaps, forte, fortasse, forsītan.
 (*Forsitan always takes subj.*)
peril, to bring into, in pēriculum addūcere.
perish, pērire.
 (*of ship*), frangi.
perjury; perjūrium.
permit, sīnere.
Persian, Persa.
persuade, persuādere. Rules 11, 12, pp. 62, 64.
pestilence, pestis, pestīlentiā.
philosopher, sāpiens, phīlōsōphus.
philosophy, phīlōsōphia.
pierce, transfigere.
piece (of money), nummus.
piety (duty, natural affection), piētas.
pile up, congērere.
pitch a camp, to, castra pōnere, mūnīre.
pity, misēret, *impers.* See Voc. 128.
place, lōcus.
first, princīpatus.
 (*vō.*) ponere.
before (prefer), antepōnere.
to take the place of, succēdere.
- plague*, pestīlentiā, pestis.
plain, campus, piānīties.
plainly, āperte, piāne.
plan, consīlium.
to form a, consīlium cāpere, inire.
play (of artillery), immittere tēla.
play, lūdere.
pleasant, jūcundus.
please, it, jūvat, libet, plācet.
 Voc. 128.
please, plācere, jūvare. Voc. 61.
plunder, vastare, dirīpere, spōliare.
Po, Pādus.
poet, poēta.
point out, ostendere, monstrare.
poison, vēnēnum.
poor, pauper.
population, pōpūlus.
position, lōcus.
to take up a, considere.
possession, get, pōtīri.
possible, use fācere, or fieri posse.
as soon as, quān prīmum.
post, to leave one's, lōco cēdere.
power, pōtentiā, pōtetas. See Synonyms.
 (*energy*), vīs.
kingly, regnum.
with all one's, summā vī.
- powerful*, pōtens.
practise, stūdere, exercere.
praise, laus, *vō.* laudare.
pray, ōrare, p̄cari.
prayers, p̄ces.
prefer, malle.
prepare, p̄rare.
for, se p̄rare ad.
for battle, arma exp̄dire.
presence of mind, to show, imp̄avidus esse, se intr̄pide ḡdere.

presence of, in, coram.
present, dōnum.
to be, adesse.
preserve, conservare.
press hard, urgēre, prēmēre.
on, instare, dat.
pressed hard, to be, lābōrare.
pretend, sīmūlare.
prevail, sūpērare.
prevent, prōhibēre.
prey, praeda.
price, prētium. See p. 48.
at a low, vili.
pride (spirit), ānīmus, sūperbia.
priest, priestess, sācerdos.
prison, carcer, vincula, pl. "bonds."
put in, in carōrem (vincūla)
conjicere.
prisoners, captīvi.
prisoner, take, cāpēre, captivum
fācere.
private (not in office), prīvātus.
produce, ēdēre.
prolong a war, bellum dūcere.
promise, to, prōmittēre, pollīcērī.
promontory, prōmontōrium.
proof, indīcium.
property, bōna, n. pl., res.
private, res fāmiliāris.
prophet, prophetess, vātes.
propose (intend), in ānīmo hābēre.
(a law), ferre.
proscribe, proscibēre.
prospect (hope), spes.
prosperity, res prospērae.
prosperous, fēlix.
protection, to be, praesīdio esse.
Voc. 85.
to be under, fidem sēqui (ali-
cujus).
proud, sūperbus.

prove, demonstrare.
prove oneself false, se praebere
infidēlem.
provide, praebere.
provided that, dum, dummodo
(p. 146).
province, prōvincia.
provision, rem frūmentāriam ex-
pēdire.
provisions, commeatus, cibus.
provoke, lācessere, incitare.
prudent, prūdēns.
punish, pūnire, poenā or supplicio
afficere.
punishment, poena; supplicium.
purpose, for this, ad hoc.
for the purpose of, causā (after
its case).
on, consulto, de industriā.
on purpose to, eo consilio ut.
to no purpose, frustrā, nēquic-
quam.
pursue, sēqui, persēqui. See Syn.,
'follow.'
put back, rēpōnere.
on trial, reum facere, nōmen
deferre; adj., reus.
out to sea, ēvēhi.
to death, interficere.

Q.

quantity, cōpia.
quarters, at close, commīnus.
quickly, cēlērīter.
quiet, tranquillus.
(nu.) quies.
quite, admōdum.

R.

rabble, turba.
race (birth), gēnus.
(tribe, family), gens.

- raiment*, vestis.
raise a siege, relinquere obsidiōnem, obsidiōne dēsistere.
 (of relieving army), obsidiōne libērare.
rampart, vallum.
range, within, intrā coniectum tēli.
rank, ordo.
 first, prīma ācies.
rash, tēmērārius, inconsultus.
rashly, tēmēre, inconsulte.
rashness, tēmēritas.
ravage, pōpūlari, vastare.
reach, pervenire ad.
read, lēgēre.
 through, perlēgēre.
reading, lectio.
readily, libenter.
ready, get, pārare, compārare.
 to, pārātus, with inf.
really, rēvērā.
rear, in the, a tergo.
rearguard, nōvissimum agmen.
reason that, for the, propterea quod.
rebel, rēbellis.
recall, rēvōcare.
 call to mind, rēpētēre, acc.; rēminisci, gen.
receive, accipēre.
recent, rēcens.
recently, nūper.
recognise, agnoscēre.
recollect, rēminisci.
 I recollect, vēnit mihi in mentem.
recollection, mēmōria.
recommend, suādēre.
recover (trans.), rēcipēre.
 (i intr.), se rēficēre.
recruit, tīro.
red, rūber.
reduce, redīgēre.
refer (to senate), rēferre.
- refrain*, tempērare, prohibēri.
refuge, to seek, to fly for, confūgēre ad.
refuse, nolle, rēcūsare. Voc. 170.
regard as, dūcēre; hābēre pro.
regiment, cōhors.
regret, deplōrare.
 (i be sorry for), paenitet.
reinforcements, supplēmentum, nōvae cōpiae.
reject, rējicēre, respuēre.
rejoice, gaudēre. Rule 22, p. 124.
relate, narrare.
relief, auxiliūm.
relieve, to, succēdēre, dat., sublevare, acc.
 from a siege, libērare obsidiōne.
rely on, frētus.
remain, mănēre.
 faithful to Caesar, fidem Caesaris sēqui.
remarkable, insignis, praecīlārus.
remedy, rēmēdiūm.
remember, meminisse, memor esse.
remembrance, mēmōria.
remind, admōnēre.
remove, transferre.
renew, redintegrare.
 battle, redintegrare, restituēre proelium.
repair, rēficēre.
repay, reddēre.
repeatedly, identidem.
repel, repulse, rēpellēre.
repent of, poenitet. Voc. 128.
replace, rēpōnēre.
reply, respondēre.
report, nuntiāre, rēferre.
resentment, dōlor, invīdia.
reserves, subsidia.
resign, se abdicare
resist, resistēre.

resolutely, constanter, obstināte.
resolution, constantia.
resolve, constituere.
resolved minds, with, obstinatis animis.
responsible for, auctor, gen.
to be responsible for, rātionem reddere (*to render an account*).
rest, the, ceteri, reliqui; reliqua pars.
rest (vb.), quiescere, se reficere.
restrain, temperare. Voc. 61.
result, eventus, exitus.
to, evēnire, evādere.
results, it, evēnit.
retreat, se recipere, pēdem referre.
sound a retreat, receptui canere. Voc. 85.
return, intr., redire, regredi.
trans. (= give back), reddere.
revenge, poena, ulciscendi libido.
to, vindicare.
(take vengeance on), ulcisci, poenam sūmere de.
review (an army), recensere.
revolt, defectio.
from, deficere ab.
revolution, res novae.
reward (vb.), praemio afficere,
(nn.) praemium.
Rhine, Rhēnus.
Rhone, Rhōdānus.
rich, dives.
riches, divitiae.
ride, equo vehi.
ride at anchor, stare in ancoris.
right, it is, oportet. Voc. 128.
rightly, jure.
riot, tumultus.
ripe (ready, early), māturus.
ripen, maturescere.
rise, surgere, oriri, cooriri.

rising ground, lōcus ēditus.
risk, pēriclitari.
run risk, pēriculum subire.
risk all, rem in summum discrimen adducere.
risk one's life, periculum capitis subire.
river, flūvius, flūmen.
up, adverso flūmine, in adversum flumen.
down, sēcundo flumine.
road, via.
(route), iter.
make a, viam (iter) mūnire.
rob, spoliare.
robber, latro.
robes of state (of senators), tūnica laticlāvia.
rock, saxum, rūpes.
rod, virga.
Rome, Rōma.
Roman, Rōmānus.
roul, fundere, fugare.
utterly, prōfigare.
rule, regere, regnare.
run, currere.
run out, procurrere.
short, deficere.
the risk, in pēriculum adduci.
away, aufūgere.
rush into, irruere.
out, eruere, effundi.
forward, prōruere.

S.

sacred, sācer.
sacrilegious, sacrilēgus.
sad (feeling sad), gloomy, tristis.
(showing sadness), maestus.
safe, in safety, tūtus, incōlūmis.
safety, sālus.
said he, inquit.

sail, nāvigare.
past, or along, praetervēhi.
along coast, ōram lēgēre.
to set sail, solvēre navem.
sailor, nauta.
sake of, for the, causā (following its case), pro.
sally, sortie, ēruptio.
salvation of, to be, sālūti esse.
 Voc. 85.
same as, the, idem ac.
same time, at the, simul.
satisfy, sātisfācere.
 (*indulge*), indulgēre.
savage, saevus.
save, servare.
say, dicēre.
men say, it is said, fērunt.
scale, ascendēre.
scarcely, vix, aegrē.
scatter, trans., disperse, intr., use *passive*.
schoolmaster, māgister.
scorn, contemptus, contemptio.
vb. See 'despise.'
scout, explōrator, spēcūlator.
scruples (religious), rēligio.
sea, mare.
sea, to put out to, evēhi.
search for, quaerēre, pētēre.
seat of war, sēdes belli.
secretly, clam.
see to, cūrare. See Voc. 149.
see to it that, take care that, cūra ut.
seek, quaerēre, pētēre.
seek refuge, confūgēre ad.
seen, vīdēri.
seize, capture. See Syn, 'take.'
 (*snatch*), rāpēre.
 (*arrest*), comprēhendēre.
seldom, rarely, rāro.
sell, vendēre.

senate, sēnatus, patres.
house, cūrīa.
senator, sēnātor.
send, mittēre.
away, dīmittēre.
back, reddēre, rēmittēre.
for, accessēre.
forwards, praemittēre.
to the aid, subsidio mittēre, submittere.
sentence, to undergo, poenam subire.
sentinels, vīgīliae, custōdes.
separate, sējungēre.
serious, grāvis.
serve, to, prōdesse, servire.
 (*as soldier*), stīpēdia mērēre (sometimes mērēre alone).
sesterce, sestertius.
set free, to, libērare.
out, prōficisci.
sail, solvēre navem, ancōram tollēre.
settlement, cōlōnia.
several, complures.
severe, grāvis.
severely, grāviter.
share (divide), partiri.
 (*take part in*), particeps esse.
shed, effundēre.
shield, scūtum.
ship, nāvis.
 (*of war*), nāvis longa.
 (*merchant, or transport*), nāvis ōnērāria.
shipwreck, naufrāgium.
shipwrecked, ejectus in litore or litus.
to be, naufrāgium facēre.
shirk, vitare, detrectare.
shoot, to (missiles), mittēre.
shore, litus, ōra.
short, brēvis.
to run short, dēficēre.

shout, clāmor.
to, clāmāre.
show, ostendēre, demonstrare.
 See Syn.
courage, virtutem praestare.
show oneself brave, se fortem praebere.
shower, imber.
 (of *missiles*), vis, multitudo,
 crēbra tēla, *pl.*
shut up, claudere.
Sicily, Sicīlia.
sick, aeger.
to be, aegrōtare.
side, lātus.
 (of a river), rīpa.
to be on our, stare a nobis.
on the one . . . on the other, ab altera parte . . . ab altera.
on this side of, citra.
sides, on all, undīque, passim.
on both, utrimque.
siege, obsīdio.
to raise a, relinquere obsīdionem,
 obsīdione dēsistere.
to relieve from, liberare obsīdione.
sight, conspectus.
of, to catch, conspīcere, conspīcari.
sign, signum.
signal for, signum, *gen.*
to serve as, signo esse. Voc. 85.
signally, so, tantā strāge.
signs of office, insignia.
silence, sīlentium.
silent, sīlens, tēcītus.
to be (make no noise at all),
 sīlēre.
to be (not to speak), tēcīre.
silently, silentio.
silver, argentum.

since, quōniam, quum. Rule 22,
 p. 124.
 (from the time when), ex quo tempore.
sink (*trans.*), submergēre.
sister, sōror.
sit, sēdere.
size, magnītūdo.
skill, sollertia.
 (gained by experience), pērītia,
 ūsus.
skin (of men), cūtis.
 (of beasts), pellis.
slaughter, trūcidare.
 (*m.*), caedes.
slave, servus.
slavery, servītus.
slay, to, occidēre, trūcidare.
 See Syn., 'kill.'
sleep, dormire.
slight, aspernari.
slip, lābi.
let, dīmīttēre, ōmittere.
slope, clīvus.
slow, lentus.
small, parvus, exīguus.
so, tantūlus.
smile, rīsus.
to, subrīdēre.
snow, nix.
so (with adv. and adj.), tam. Voc. 6.
 (in such a way), ita.
 (to such an extent), adeo.
great, tantus.
many, tot.
much (*adv.*), tantōpere, tantum.
often, tōties.
soil (*ground*), sōlum.
soldier, miles.
of line, lēgionarius.
some, nonnulli.
some days after, ālīquot post diebus.

some . . . others, alii . . . alii.
sometimes, nonnunquam, interdum.
son, filius.
of, nātus. Ex. 87.
song, cantus.
soon, mox, brēvi (tempore).
as soon as, simulac. Rule 25,
p. 140.
as soon as possible, quam primum.
sorrow, dōlor.
sorry, use paenitet. Voc. 128.
sound, sōnus, sōnitus.
sound a retreat, to, rēceptui cānere.
south, mēridies.
sow, to, sērere.
Spain, Hispānia.
Spaniard, Hispānus.
Spanish, Hispānicus.
spare, parcere.
Spartan, Lacedaemōnius.
speak, lōqui.
speaker, ōrātor.
spear, hasta.
speech, ōrātiō.
to make a, orationem habere.
speed, cēlērītas.
spend, āgēre.
splendid, insignis.
spoil, spōlia, n. pl.
sports, ludī.
spring, vēr.
spy, spēcūlator.
squadron, āla, turma.
staff (officers), lōgāti.
stand, stare.
firm, rēsistere, in lōco perstare.
by, adstare.
for the consulship, consūlatum
pētere.
standards, to advance, signa ferre.
start, prōfiscisci.

starvation, fāmes.
starve, fāme perire.
state, civitas.
adj., publicus.
state of affairs, in this, quae quum
ita sint, essent.
statue, stātua.
stay, mănēre, mōrari.
steal, abripere.
stealthily, furtim.
steep, praeruptus.
still (till now), adhuc.
(even), etiam.
sting (provoke), incitare, lācessere.
stone, lāpis.
storm, tempestas.
to, expugnare.
story, fābūla.
to tell a, narrare.
straight (adv.), directo.
(make straight for),
recto itinere petere.
strange, mīrus, mīrābilis.
stranger, hospes, advēna.
straw, not care a, flocci non fācere.
stream, rīvus.
street, via.
strength, rōbur, vires.
stretch out, to, extendere, porrīgere.
strict, sēvērus.
(careful), dīligens.
strike, to, percūtēre, fērire.
a camp, castra mōvēre.
terror, injōcere terrorem, dat.
stroke, mulcēre.
strong, firmus, vālidus.
strongly, vālide.
stubbornly, ācriter.
stumble, prōlābi.
stupefied, obstūpēfactus.
subdue, sūbīgēre, in pōtēstatem
rēdīgēre.

subject, imperio subjectus.
to (liable to), obnoxius.
succeed, get on well, prōficere.
turn out well, prospere evēnire.
success, successus.
without, frustra, nēquicquam.
win a, rem prospere gērere.
such, tālis.
such . . . as, tālis . . . quālis.
suddenly, sūbito.
suffer, pati.
suffering, dōlor.
sufferings, māla.
sufficient, sātis.
to be (of supplies), suppētēre.
suitable, idōneus.
suits, it, convēnit.
sum, summa.
summer, aestas.
summon, arcessere.
back, revōcare.
sumptuous, lautus.
sun, sōl.
sunset, solis occāsus.
superior, to be, praestare.
superstition, superstītio, nīmia or
 prāva rēligio, īnanis tīmor deorum.
supper, cēna.
supply, praeberē.
support (military), subsidia, n. pl.
to, sustinere, tōlērare. See Syn.,
 'bear.'
 (*aid*), adjūvare.
supreme power, summa impērii.
sure, to be, pro certo habere.
surmount, sūpērare.
surpass, sūpērare, praestare.
surprise, opprimere.
surrender (trans.), trādere, dēdere.
 (*intr.*), se dēdere.
surround, circumvēnire, cingere.

survive, superesse.
surviving, superstes.
sustain (encourage), confirmare.
swear, iūro.
swim, natare.
sword, glādius.
Syracusan, Syrācūsanus.
Syracuse, Syracusae.

T.

take, capture, capere.
away, auferre.
from, privare.
by storm, expugnare.
captive, capere.
ill, aegre ferre.
part in, interesse.
to flight, terga vertere.
the place of, succēdere.
up arms, arma sūmere.
up one's position, considere.
take on board, in nāvem excipere.
taking place, to be, pass. of āgere.
talent (money), tālentum.
talents, ingēnium.
talk, loqui.
tax, vectigal.
teach, dōcere.
tear, lacrima.
temper, mens, ānīmus.
temple, templum, aedes.
templ, temptare.
ten, one in (each tenth man), decimus
 quisque.
tent, tābernāculum.
tenth, one, decima pars.
tenths, three, tres decimae partes.
terms, conditiones.
on equal, aequo Marte, aequa
 contentione.
terrible, terrībilis.

terrify, terrēre.
territories, fines (*in sing.* finis = boundary).
terror, to inspire with, injicere terrorem, dat.
thank, grātiās āgēre, dat.
theft, furtum.
then, tum, tunc.
 (= next), deinde.
therefore, itaque.
thereupon, deinde, quo facto.
thick, densus.
thicket, virgultum.
thief, fūr.
think, pūtare, existimare, arbitrari.
I almost, haud scio an.
thirds, two, duae partes.
thirst, sitis.
threats, minae.
threaten, minari. Voc. 61.
 (by proximity), imminere, instare.
threatening, minax.
throw, jaccere.
away, abjicere.
throw a bridge over a river, pontem in flumine facere.
thus, ita, sic, hoc modo.
Tiber, Tiberis.
time, tempus.
at the same, simul.
for a little, paulisper.
for a long, diu.
in, ad tempus, tempori.
in a short, brevi (tempore).
till that, ad id temporis.
to waste, tempus terere.
for some, aliquamdiu.
now for a long, jampridem, jamdudum. (P. 155, note 1.)
in our, nostrā aetate, his temporibus.

tinge, tinguere.
tired, defessus.
tired of, to be, piget, taedet. Voc. 128.
to-day, hodie.
toga, tōga.
together, unā.
to-morrow, crās.
too late, sēro.
little, parum, adv. used as noun.
much, nimius, adj., nimium; adv., used as noun.
top. See note, p. 5.
tortment, torture, cruciare.
torture, cruciatus.
touch, tangere.
towards, erga.
evening, sub vesp̄erum.
town, oppidum.
town, people of, oppidāni.
traitor, prōditor, perfidus.
transfer, transferre.
traveller, viator.
treachery, prōditio.
treason (accuse of), mājestatis accūsare.
treasure, thēsaurus.
treat, afficere.
well, bēnēficio afficere.
for, āgēre de.
treaty, foedus.
tree, arbor.
trench, fossa.
trial of, to make, exp̄eriri, temptare.
to be on, reus esse.
to put on, reum aliquem facere, nomen alicujus deferre.
tribe, tribus.
tribune (of people), tribūnus plēbis. (of soldiers), tribūnus militum.
tribute, tribūtum, stipendium, vectigal.

trick, dōlus, ars.
triumph (*procession*), triumphus.
in triumph, victor.
troop (*of horse*), turma.
troops, cōpiae.
Troy, Trōja.
true, vērus.
trust, credo, committo. Voc. 61.
truth, to tell the, vĕra dicĕre.
try, cōnari.
turn, in turn, invicem, singuli.
back, reverti.
round (*intr.*), converti, se convertĕre.
two divisions, in, bipartito.
tyrant, tyrannus.

U.

unaccustomed, insuĕtus.
unanimously, consensu (omnium).
approved, to be, omnium consensu comprōbari.
uncertain, dūbĭus.
unconquerable, indōmĭtus, invictus.
under arms, in armis.
undergo sentence, poenam subire.
understand, intellĕgere.
undertake, suscipĕre.
unexpected, sūbitus, inōpinātus.
unfortunate, infĕlix, fūnestus.
union, consensus.
universe, mundus.
unjust, injustus.
unlike, dissimĭlis.
unmolested, incōlūmis.
unmoved, immōtus.
unshaken, immōtus.
until, dum, dōnec, quoad. Rule 25,
 p. 140.
 (*prep.*), usque ad.
untouched, intĕger.

unwilling, invĭtus.
to be, nolle.
unworthy, indignus.
upright, prōbus.
upset, ĕvertĕre.
urge, hortari, admōnĕre.
on, urgĕre.
use, ūti.
useful, ūtilis.
useless, ĭnūtilis.
utmost (*extreme*), summus.
to do one's, id āgĕre ut (*final*).

V.

vain, in, frustra, nĕquicquam.
value, aestĭmare.
vanguard, primum agmen.
various, vārius, dĭversus.
vengeance on, to take, ulcisci, poenas sūmĕre de.
veteran, vĕtĕranus.
vexed, to be, aegre ferre.
victorious, to come off, ĕvādĕre victor.
victory, to win a, victoriam rĕportare.
vigorous, ālācer.
vigour, alacritas.
village, vĭcus, pāgus.
vine, vĭtis.
vineyard, vĭnĕtum.
violate, violāre.
violence, vis.
virtue, virtus.
visit, to, visĕre.
voice, vox.
with a loud, magna voce.
vow, to, jūrare, se jurejurando obstringĕre.

W.

waggon, plaustrum.
wage war, bellum gĕrĕre, bellum inferre.

wait, mănēre.

for, exspectare.

wake, excitare.

wall, mūrus, moenia, *n. pl.*

wander, vāgari, errare.

war, bellum.

prepare for, bellum pārare.

declare, indicēre.

want, inōpia.

vb., carere, egere. See Syn.

warn, admōnēre.

warning, exemplum.

warrior, iūvēnis.

waste time, to, tempus tērēre.

watch, spectare, intuēri.

about the third, de tertia vīgilia.

way (manner), mōdus.

(*route*), via.

weak, infirmus, invālidus.

weakness (want of energy), infirmitas, imbecillitas (animi, consilii).

(*of forces, etc.*), use exiguus (small).

wealth, divītia.

weapon, tēlum.

wear, passive of induēre, vestire.

weary, fessus, *or* use taedet. Voc 182.

weave, to, texēre.

weep, lacrimare.

weigh anchor, ancōram tollēre.

well, bene.

west, solis occāsus, occidens.

western (terra) quae ad occasum solis spectat.

what news? quid nōvi?

sort of? quālis?

when? quando.

whence? (where from?) unde.

whenever, quandocunque.

where? ūbi, quā.

whereupon, quo facto.

whether . . . or (double cond.), seu . . . seu, sive . . . sive.

(*double question*), utrum . . . an.

which of two? ūter.

whilst, dōnec, quoad. Rule 25, p. 140.

white, albus, candīdus.

whither, where to? quo.

who? quis, quisnam.

adj., qui.

whoever, whatever, quisquis, quicumque.

whole, tōtus, omnis, ūniversus.

See Syn.

wholly, omnīno.

why? cur, quārē, quāmobrem.

wide, lātus.

wife, uxor.

willingly, libenter.

win (obtain), nancisci, ādīpisci.

win a victory, victoriam rēportare.

wind, ventus.

wing, āla.

winter, hīems.

quarters, hiberna (*n. pl.*).

wisdom, sāpientia.

wise, sāpiens, prūdens.

in no, haudquāquam.

wiser than to, sapientior quam qui.

Rule 18, p. 110.

wish to (be willing), velle.

wish not to (be unwilling), nolle.

withdraw, pēdem rēferre, serēcīpere.

within (prep.), intrā.

without accomplishing anything, re infecta.

withstand, rēsistēre.

wolf, lūpus.

woman, mūlier.

wonder (at), mirari, admīrari.

wonderful, mīrus, mirabilis.

wood, silva.

wool, lāna.

woollen, lāneus.

word, verbum.

to keep, fidem praestare.

work, labor, ōpus. See Syn.

to, lābōrare.

world, orbis terrarum.

(*universe*), mundus.

worn out, confectus.

worship (*vb.*) cōlĕre, (*m.*) cultus.

worth, *to think*, aestĭmare. Voc 57.

worthy, dignus.

would that, ūtĭnam. See Voc. 254.

wound, vulnus.

deadly, mortāle vulnus.

to, vulnĕrare.

wounded, vulnĕratus, *adj.*, saucius.

wreck (*of ship*), frangĕre.

write, scribĕre.

wrong, to do, peccare.

to, injūriam inferre, *dat.*

wrongfully, injūriā.

Y.

year, annus.

yearly (*adv.*), quotannis.

yesterday, hĕri.

yet (*still*), adhuc.

not yet, nondum.

yield (*produce*), ferre.

(*give up*), dĕdĕre, *intr.*, cĕdĕre

yoke, send under, sub jūgum mittĕre

young, jūvĕnis.

younger, nātu mĭnor.

youth, jūvĕnis, adōlescens.

(*collective*), jūventus.

Z.

zeal, stūdiūm.

INDEX OF CONSTRUCTIONS

A.		PAGE
Ablative—		
Agent and Instrument	Prelim. Ex. A.	
Cause	Prelim. Ex. G.	
Absolute (attendant circumstances)	Rule 5, Ex. 26-28	24
Words governing Ablative	Prelim. Ex. G. Voc. 42	
Time, Place	Rule 6	32
Comparison, Quality, Measure of		
Difference	Ex. 42, 43	36, 37
Price	Ex. 57, 58	49, 50
Origin, Separation, Association	Ex. 87, 88	70, 71
Respect, Manner	Ex. 89, 90	72, 73
Abstract Nouns in English . . . . .	. . . . .	91
Accusative—		
Verbs governing two Accusatives	Prelim. Ex. E.	
Acc. to express Time, Place, Space	Rule 6	32
Active and Passive	Prelim. Ex. A.	
Adverbs (Pronouns and Adverbs) . . . . .	. . . . .	164, 165
	Ex. 212, 213	166, 167
Antequam	Rule 25	140
	Voc. 182	227
Apposition	Prelim. Ex. C.	
C.		
Causal Clauses	Rule 22	124
	Ex. 160-163	124-126
Command—		
Direct	Prelim. Ex. B	
	Rule 10	60
	Ex. 73, 74	61
Indirect	Rule 11	62
	Ex. 75-84	65-68
	Ex. 91-98	73-77

Comparative Clauses	Rule 30	178
	Ex. 231-236	178-181
Composite Subject	Prelim. Ex. C. . . .	
Concessive Clauses	Rule 29	172
	Ex. 223-230	173-177
Conditional Sentences	Rule 28	156, 157
	Ex. 202-211	157-163
Consecutive Clauses	Rule 3	8
	Ex. 6-19	9-19
Consecutive Particles, &c. . . .	Voc. 6	203
Conditional Sentences	Rule 28	156, 157
	Ex. 202-211	157-163
Cum following case (mecum, &c.) . . . .	. . . .	7, note 2

D.

Dative—

Dat. of Possessor	Prelim. Ex. F. . . .	
Verbs governing Dative	Voc. 61	211
	Ex. 61, 62	53
Of Purpose	Ex. 85, 86	69
	Voc. 85	215
Dicor and videor. <i>Personal</i> Con- struction of . . . .	. . . .	44, note 1
Dum	Rule 27	146
	Ex. 190-193	

E.

Etsi, etiamsi	Rule 29	172
-----------------------	-----------------	-----

F.

Factitive Verbs	Prelim. Ex. E. . . .	
Fearing, Verbs of	Rule 21	120
	Ex. 155-159	121-123
Final Clauses	Rule 2	4
	Ex. 2-5	4-7
Final and Consecutive	Ex. 10-19	13-19
(Expressed by Relative and Subj.)	Rule 18	110
Future Infinitive translated by fore (futurum esse) ut . . . .	. . . .	152, note 1

G

Genitive—	PAGE
Partitive	Ex. 59, 60 51, 52
Other uses	Ex. 131, 132 21, note 1, 102
List of words followed by genitive	Voc. 131 221
Gerunds and Gerundives	Rule 13 78
	Ex. 99-103 79-81
	Ex. 106-109 84, 85
Expressing Obligation	Rules 19, 20 116, 117
	Ex. 149-154 117-119

I.

Impersonal Verbs (Interest, Refert). (Paenitet, etc.)	Voc. 109 219 Voc. 128 221 Ex. 128-134 100-104
In (with Verbs of Motion)	31, Note 1
Indirect Question (see Question)	
Indirect Statement	Rule 6 38
(<i>Se, eum</i> in Ind. St.)	Rule 7 40
(Tenses of Infinitive)	Rule 8 42
	Ex. 44-56 39-48
	Ex. 63-70 54-57
(Uses of Moneo, Suadeo, &c.)	Rule 12 64
	Ex. 77, 78 65, 66
(Subordinate Clauses in)	Rule 17 96
	Ex. 124-127 96-99
(Verbs followed by)	Voc. 44 209
Infinitive as Subject or Complement of Verb, Prolate Infinitive	Rule 4 20 Ex. 20-23 21-23
(Words which take Prolate Infinitive)	Voc. 20 205
Infinitive in Indirect Statement	Rules 6, 7, 8 38-42
Future Infinitive translated by fore (futurum esse) ut . . . . .	. . . . . 152, note 1
Intransitive Verbs (<i>use in Passive</i>)	Rule 9 58
	Ex. 71, 72 59
(<i>Participles of</i>) . . . . .	. . . . . 26
Iipse	Rule 7 40
	Ex. 46 41

	J.	PAGE
Jampridem, Jamdudum		155, note I
	L.	
Locative	Rule 6	32
	N.	
Nemo, nullus		9, note I
Ne . . . quidem	Voc. 84	215
Ne quis, ut nullus		13
Neu, neve	Rules 10, 11	61, 62
	O.	
Oratio Obliqua	Rule 31	182
	Examples ,	183, 184
	Ex. 237-254	185-193
Order of words in Latin Sentence		195
	P.	
Participles	Rule 5	24
	Ex. 24-35	25-31
Participles of Intransitive and De- ponent Verbs		26
Present Participle in English		27
Participles in Latin, where not used in English		27
Partitive Genitive	Ex. 59, 60	51, 52
Place (whither, where, whence)	Rule 6	32
	Ex. 36-41	32-35
Postquam	Rule 25	140
	Voc. 182	227
Prepositions	Prelim. Ex. H. K.	
Prepositional Phrases	Appendix	236
Price and Value	Ex. 57, 58	49, 50
Pronouns and Adverbs		164, 165
	Ex. 212, 213	166, 167
Proper Names (<i>how to render in Latin</i>)		128, note I
Purpose, different ways of expressing (See also Final Clauses)		110, note I

	Q.	PAGE
Quamvis	Rule 29	172
Quanquam	Rule 29	172
Quasi	Rule 30	178
Questions—		
Direct	Prelim. Ex. D.	
	Rule 15	86
	Ex. 110, 111	87
Indirect	Rule 16	88
	Ex. 112-123	89-95
	Ex. 135-140	105-109
Interrogative Words	Voc. 110	219
Words Introducing Indirect Question	Voc. 112	221
Quin	Rule 23	130
Verbs and phrases to be followed by Quin	Voc. 168	225
	Ex. 168, 169	131
	Ex. 172-181	133-139
Quisquam, quis, etc.		164
Quo (expressing purpose)	Rule 18	110
Quod, quia	Rule 22	124
	Voc. 160	224
Quominus	Rule 24	132
Verbs which are followed by Quo- minus, and when negative by Quin	Voc. 170	225
	Ex. 170, 171	132, 133
	Ex. 172-181	133-139
Quum	Rule 26	144
	Ex. 188, 189	145
	Ex. 192, 193	148, 149
Quum tum		179, note 1
	R.	
Relative—		
Simple uses	Prelim. Ex. D.	
With Subjunctive	Rule 18	110
	Ex. 141-148	111-115
Attraction into Relative Clause		202
Superlative (or solus, unus, &c.) in Relative clause		152, note 2

		S.	PAGE
Se, suus (eum, ejus). Simple uses	Prelim. Ex. F.		
(In Indirect Statement)	Rule 7		40
Sequence of Tenses	Rule 2		2
In Consecutive Clauses			8, note 1
In Indirect Questions			88
Seu, sive			159, note 1
Sicut	Rule 30		178
Space, extent of	Rule 6		32
	Ex. 36-41		32-35
Summus, medius, etc.			5, note 1
Supines	Rule 14		82
	Ex. 104, 105		83
T.			
Tamquam	Rule 30		178
Tell (ambiguous use in English)			64 and fin.
Temporal Clauses	Rules 25, 26, 27		140, 144, 146
List of Temporal Conjunctions	Voc. 182		227
	Ex. 182-201		141-155
Time, Place, Space	Rule 6		32
	Ex. 36-41		32-35
W.			
Whether . . . or			159, note 1